

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

*Учебно-методическое пособие
по практике устной и письменной речи
для студентов, изучающих английский
язык как второй иностранный*

2010

УДК 811.111'38(075.8)
ББК 81.432.1-923.7
А64

Автор-составитель: старший преподаватель кафедры английской филологии УО «ВГУ им. П.М. Машерова» **О.П. Осипова**

Рецензент:
доцент кафедры дошкольного и начального образования УО «ВГУ им. П.М. Машерова»,
кандидат филологических наук *О.И. Воробьева*

Учебно-методическое пособие предназначено для студентов II курса филологического факультета специальности «Романо-германская филология», изучающих английский язык как второй иностранный язык.
Учебное издание направлено на формирование языковых навыков и речевых умений по темам «Семья», «Студенческая жизнь», «Личность человека», «Жилье», «Досуг».

УДК 811.111'38(075.8)
ББК 81.432.1-923.7

© УО «ВГУ им. П.М. Машерова», 2010

CONTENTS

ВВЕДЕНИЕ	4
UNIT I. MY FAMILY	5
• Section A. Personal Identification.....	5
• Section B. Family Relationships.....	35
UNIT II. STUDENT'S LIFE	57
• Section A. Student's Working Day.....	57
• Section B. Our Studies.....	72
UNIT III. PLACE OF RESIDENCE	103
• Section A. My Flat / House.....	103
• Section B. Household Chores.....	145
UNIT IV. HUMAN PERSONALITY	157
• Section A. Appearance.....	157
• Section B. Character.....	189
UNIT V. LEISURE	214
• Section A. Hobbies and Interests.....	214
• Section B. Weekends and Holidays.....	233
ЛИТЕРАТУРА	242

ВВЕДЕНИЕ

Данное пособие предназначено для студентов 2 курса филологического факультета специальности «Романо-германская филология», изучающих английский язык, как второй иностранный язык (первый год изучения).

Целью пособия является формирование и развитие навыков устной и письменной речи по темам «Семья», «Студенческая жизнь», «Личность человека», «Жилье», «Досуг». Тематическое содержание пособия соответствует требованиям учебной программы по курсу «Английский язык как второй иностранный» для студентов, обучающихся по специальности «Романо-германская филология» (БГУ, 2008).

Учебно-методическое пособие состоит из 5 основных частей, каждая из которых включает 2 тематических раздела. Все разделы имеют единую структуру, что позволяет осуществлять поэтапное, целенаправленное формирование языковых, речевых и коммуникативных навыков и умений. Тематика и характер учебных материалов обеспечивают формирование у студентов тематического словаря, развития монологической и диалогической речи, умения выражать собственное мнение, а также умения понимать живую речь носителей языка и письменно излагать материал.

При составлении учебно-методического пособия были использованы материалы современных английских изданий, изданий ведущих белорусских вузов.

Пособие может быть рекомендовано как для аудиторной работы со студентами, так и для самостоятельной работы студентов, а также может быть полезным широкому кругу лиц, начинающих изучать английский язык.

UNIT I. MY FAMILY

Section A. Personal Identification

What's your name?

Active Words

first / Christian name	pet name
patronymic / middle name	nickname
surname (second / family / last name)	pseudonym
maiden name	to call / to call smb. after smb
married name	to be christened
	to call smb. after smb.

- What's your full name?
- My full name is Ivanov Alexander Petrovich. Ivanov is my surname (family name). Alexander (Alex for short) is my Christian name (first name). Petrovich is my patronymic name (middle name). Call me Alex by my first name.
- Sorry, how do you spell your surname?
- I-V-A-N-O-V.
- How do you spell your name?
- A-L-E-X-A-N-D-E-R.
- That's right. Thank you.

Exercise 1. In pairs make up the same dialogues as in the example above.

Exercise 2. How do you spell these famous people's first names?

<i>First name</i>	<i>Surname</i>
1. _____	<u>Jackson</u>
2. _____	<u>Bush</u>
3. _____	<u>Graff</u>
4. _____	<u>Vivaldi</u>
5. _____	<u>Pitt</u>
6. _____	<u>DiCaprio</u>
7. _____	<u>Murphy</u>
8. _____	<u>Lopez</u>
9. _____	<u>Einstein</u>
10. _____	<u>Obama</u>

Exercise 3. People's families and friends often use short forms of their first names. Put the right short forms with the names.

Bill Bob Chris Chris Debbie Des Gill Jo Stan
 Kate Ken Liz Dick Maggie Mike Penny Pete Phil

Elizabeth _____	Christopher _____
Philip _____	Stanley _____
Peter _____	Margaret _____
Michael _____	Deborah _____
Christine _____	Gillian _____
Kenneth _____	Desmond _____
Catherine _____	Robert _____
Penelope _____	William _____
Joanne _____	Richard _____

Exercise 4. Give the full names of the following short ones.

Alec-	Judy-
Richie-	Sam-
Pat-	Andy-
Lizzy-	Nick-
Betty-	Jim-
Sue-	Jeff-
Jozy-	Ellen-
Lew-	Becky-

Exercise 5. See how easily and quickly you can find the missing names in the sentences below. The answers are printed after the exercise.

- 1 William F. Cody (1846 - 1917) was **nicknamed**
- 2 Mozart's **Christian names** were
- 3 Queen Elizabeth's youngest son **is called**
- 4 The Idlewild Airport in New York **was renamed** ... after this man's death.
- 5 ...'s **real name** is Richard Starkey.
- 6 A Swedish actress **by the name of** Greta Gustaffson adopted the screen **pseudonym** of
- 7 Bach's **initials, J.S., stand for**
- 8 Mrs. Mark Phillips' **maiden name** was
- 9 The newest airport in Paris is **named after**
- 10 Samuel Clemens' **pen-name** was
- 11 The tallest building in Paris **takes its name from** the engineer,
- 12 Someone **christened** Adolph Schickelgruber became world-famous **under the name of**
- 13 During the seventies a certain Cassius Clay **changed his name to**

Answers:

1 Buffalo Bill 2 Wolfgang Amadeus 3 Prince Edward 4 Kennedy International Airport
5 Ringo Starr 6 Greta Garbo 7 Johann Sebastian 8 Princess Anne (Windsor) 9 Charles
de Gaulle 10 Mark Twain 11 (Alexandre Gustave) Eiffel 12 Adolf Hitler 13
Mohammed Ali

Exercise 6. Discuss the answers to these questions.

- 1 What nicknames have you had, if any? Why did people choose them?
- 2 What will you call your children? Why?
- 3 What's the derivation of the most popular surnames in your country?
- 4 How has the fashion in first names changed in your lifetime?
- 5 How important do you think a good name is for pop and film stars?

Listening

Listening 1.

(Headway elementary (Student's book), Unit 1, t. 7d)

Exercise. Listen to the conversation. In pairs ask the same questions.

- How do you spell your first name?
-
- How do you spell your surname?
-

Listening 2.

(Headway beginner (Student's book), Unit 4, t. 4.11)

Exercise. Listen to people, spell their first name and their surname.

Write the names and the surnames you hear on the tape.

<i>First name</i>	<i>Surname</i>
1. _____	_____
2. _____	_____
3. _____	_____
4. _____	_____
5. _____	_____

Listening 3.

(Headway beginner (Workbook), Unit 4, t. 4.8)

Exercise. Put the following lines in the correct place in the conversation.

- And your name is?
- Good morning. Bath English Language Centre.
- How do you spell your surname?
- Thank you for telephoning. Goodbye.
- Thank you. I'm sorry. He isn't in his office.
- What's your phone number?

- (1) _____
- Hello. The director, Mike Stevens, please.
- (2) _____
- Akemi Ishikawa.
- (3) _____
- I-S-H-I-K-A-W-A.
- (4) _____
- 813 5824 9687.
- (5) _____
- Goodbye.

Listening 4.

(Listen carefully, unit 2, activity 1-2, 5-6)

Exercise 1. First listen to the tape. Then say these surnames out aloud.

George	Jones	Richards	Simpson	Thomson
Gordon	Johnson	Richmond	Samson	Thomas
Gray	Harris	Short	Schmidt	Winters
Graham	Harrison	Shaw	Smith	Wilson

Exercise 2. Some of the people from Exercise 1 will give their names. Number the names you hear from 1-8.

<i>First name</i>	<i>Surname</i>
1. _____	_____
2. _____	_____
3. _____	_____
4. _____	_____
5. _____	_____
6. _____	_____
7. _____	_____
8. _____	_____

Exercise 3. Listen to people opening bank accounts. Write down their names.

<i>First name</i>	<i>Surname</i>
1. _____	_____
2. _____	_____
3. _____	_____
4. _____	_____
5. _____	_____
6. _____	_____
7. _____	_____
8. _____	_____

Exercise 4. Listen. Did the bank clerk write down these names correctly? Put a tick besides the names if they are spelled correctly. Correct the names with the wrong spelling.

- 1 *Jesse Bowman*
- 2 *Trisha Everette*
- 3 *Seichi Shimamoto*
- 4 *Karla Mestenza*
- 5 *Dorothy Mazzard*
- 6 *Fernando Gomez*
- 7 *Ronald Cohen*
- 8 *Bradley Metcalf*

Where are you from?

Active Words

to be from / to come from
resident
foreigner
native
immigrant

nationality
origin
capital
country / city / town / village
language

Country	Capital	People	Adjective
Argentina	Buenos Aires	the Argentinians/ an Argentinian	Argentinian (lang. Spanish)
Australia	Canberra	the Australians/ an Australian	Australian (lang. English)
Austria	Vienna	the Austrians/ an Austrian	Austrian (lang. German)
Belarus	Minsk	the Belarusians/ a Belarusian	Belarusian
Belgium	Brussels	the Belgians/ a Belgian	Belgian (lang. French)
Brazil	Brasilia	the Brazilians/ a Brazilian	Brazilian (lang. Portuguese)
Bulgaria	Sofia	the Bulgarians/ a Bulgarian	Bulgarian
Canada	Ottawa	the Canadians/ a Canadian	Canadian (lang. English, French)
China	Peking (Beijing)	the Chinese/ a Chinese	Chinese
Cuba	Havana	the Cubans/ a Cuban	Cuban (lang. Spanish)

Denmark	Copenhagen	the Danish/ a Dane	Danish
Egypt	Cairo	the Egyptians/ an Egyptian	Egyptian (lang. Arabic)
England	London	the English/ an Englishman	English
Finland	Helsinki	the Finnish/ a Finn	Finnish
France	Paris	the French/ a Frenchman	French
Germany	Berlin	the Germans/ a German	German
Great Britain	London	the British/ a Briton	British (lang. English)
Greece	Athens	the Greeks/ a Greek	Greek
Hungary	Budapest	the Hungarians/ a Hungarian	Hungarian
Holland (the Netherlands)	Amsterdam	the Dutch/ a Dutchman	Dutch
Italy	Rome	the Italians/ an Italian	Italian
India	Delhi	the Indians/ an Indian	Indian (lang. Hindi)
Ireland	Belfast (NI) Dublin (I)	the Irish/ an Irishman	Irish (lang. English, Irish)
Israel	Tel-Aviv	the Israeli/ an Israeli	Hebrew
Japan	Tokyo	the Japanese/ a Japanese	Japanese
Korea	Seoul	the Koreans/ a Korean	Korean
Mexico	Mexico	the Mexicans/ a Mexican	Mexican (lang. Spanish)
Norway	Oslo	the Norwegians/ a Norwegian	Norwegian
Poland	Warsaw	the Polish/ a Pole	Polish
Portugal	Lisbon	the Portuguese/ a Portuguese	Portuguese
Romania	Bucharest	the Romanians/ a Romanian	Romanian
Russia	Moscow	the Russians/ a Russian	Russian
Scotland	Edinburgh	the Scottish/ a Scot	Scottish
Spain	Madrid	the Spanish/ a Spaniard	Spanish
Sweden	Stockholm	the Swedish/ a Swede	Swedish
Switzerland	Bern	the Swiss/ a Swiss	Swiss (lang. Italian, French, Swiss-German)
Thailand	Bangkok	the Thai/ a Thai	Thai
Turkey	Ankara	the Turks/ a Turk	Turkish
Ukraine	Kiev	the Ukrainians/ a Ukrainian	Ukrainian
The United States of America	Washington	the Americans/ an American	American (lang. American English)
Wales	Cardiff	the Welsh/ a Welshman	Welsh

1.
 - Where are you from, Sandra?
 - I'm from Madrid in Spain.
2.
 - Where do you come from, Mayumi?
 - I'm from Japan. From Tokyo.
3.
 - What is the country of your residence, Kim?
 - It's Australia.
4.
 - What is your native country, Marie?
 - France.
5.
 - What is your nationality, Sergio?
 - I'm an Italian.
6.
 - What is your native language / mother tongue?
 - German.

Exercise 1. Match the countries and their capitals. Use an atlas if necessary. Say what we call people who come from these countries.

COUNTRIES	CAPITALS
Argentina Czechoslovakia China	Amsterdam Athens Bangkok
Denmark Egypt Germany Greece	Beijing Belgrade Berne
India Indonesia Iran Ireland	Buenos-Aires Cairo Copenhagen
Japan the Netherlands Nigeria	Delhi Djakarta Dublin Berlin
Poland Portugal Turkey	Ankara Kinshasa Lagos
Switzerland Taiwan Thailand	Lisbon Moscow Prague
The USSR Yugoslavia Zaire	Taipei Tehran Tokyo Warsaw

Model: 1. Tokyo is the capital of A person from Japan is ...

Exercise 2. Which country is the odd one out, and why?

1. England, Canada, Iceland, Australia
2. Mexico, Brazil, Spain, Chile
3. Italy, Austria, Germany, Switzerland
4. Morocco, Egypt, China, Saudi Arabia
5. Switzerland, Canada, Scotland, France

Exercise 3. Think of any city and ask your group mates where it is. Be sure you know the answer yourself.

*Model: - Where's Barcelona?
- It's in Spain.*

Exercise 4. a) Change the countries into nationalities and put them in the correct columns.

-an	-ish	-ese	irregular

Mexico	Switzerland	China	Greece	Cuba
England	Spain	Hungary	Israel	Peru
Japan	Germany	Denmark	Holland	Poland
France	America	Sweden	Belgium	Vietnam
Portugal	Australia	Italy	Ireland	Egypt
India	Korea	Argentina	Britain	Canada
Thailand	Finland	Iraq	Norway	Russia

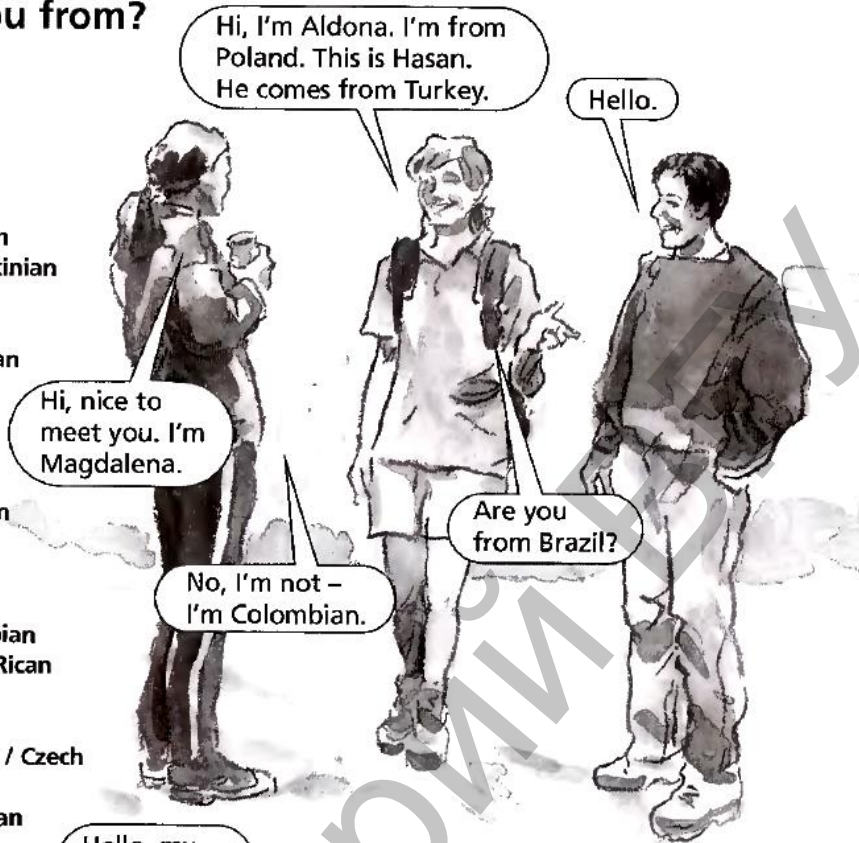
b) Complete these sentences with appropriate names of peoples.

1. _____ wear kilts.
2. Everybody knows that _____ eat a lot of pasta.
3. _____ like taking saunas.
4. _____ are good at business.
5. _____ are usually hard-working.
6. I think that _____ are very friendly.
7. _____ grow lots of tulips.
8. People often say that _____ are reserved.
9. _____ are very organised.
10. I met a lot of _____ on my trip to Athens.
11. _____ had many great philosophers.
12. _____ talk a lot about the weather.
13. _____ eat a lot of fish.
14. _____ wear fur hats in winter.
15. _____ make good cheese.
16. _____ like very spicy food.
17. _____ drink very strong coffee.
18. _____ like to eat hot food.
19. _____ very often prefer fast food.
20. _____ are fond of drinking tea.

c) Now study the pictures below and check your answers.

Where are you from?

- America / American
- Argentina / Argentinian
- Austria / Austrian
- Belgium / Belgian
- Belarus / Belarussian
- Bosnia / Bosnian
- Bolivia / Bolivian
- Brazil / Brazilian
- Britain / British
- Bulgaria / Bulgarian
- Canada / Canadian
- Chile / Chilean
- China / Chinese
- Columbia / Columbian
- Costa Rica / Costa Rican
- Croatia / Croatian
- Cyprus / Cypriot
- the Czech Republic / Czech
- Denmark / Danish
- Ecuador / Ecuadorian
- Egypt / Egyptian
- England / English
- Estonia / Estonian
- Finland / Finnish
- France / French
- Georgia / Georgian
- Germany / German
- Greece / Greek
- Guatemala / Guatemalan
- Honduras / Honduran
- Hungary / Hungarian
- India / Indian
- Ireland / Irish
- Italy / Italian
- Japan / Japanese
- Kazakhstan / Kazakh
- Kenya / Kenyan
- Latvia / Latvian
- Lebanon / Lebanese
- Lithuania / Lithuanian
- Malaysia / Malaysian
- Mexico / Mexican





- Moldova / Moldovan
- Mongolia / Mongolian
- Montenegro / Montenegrin
- Morocco / Moroccan
- the Netherlands (Holland) / Dutch
- Nicaragua / Nicaraguan
- Norway / Norwegian
- Pakistan / Pakistani
- Panama / Panamanian
- Peru / Peruvian
- Poland / Polish
- Portugal / Portuguese
- Romania / Romanian
- Russia / Russian
- Saudi Arabia / Saudi
- Scotland / Scottish
- Serbia / Serbian
- Singapore / Singaporean
- Slovakia / Slovakian
- Slovenia / Slovenian
- South Africa / South African
- Spain / Spanish
- Sweden / Swedish
- Switzerland / Swiss
- Tanzania / Tanzanian
- Thailand / Thai
- Turkey / Turkish
- Ukraine / Ukrainian
- United Arab Emirates / Emirati
- Uruguay / Uruguayan
- Venezuela / Venezuelan
- Wales / Welsh
- Yugoslavia / Yugoslavian



Exercise 5. Can you identify the languages (Chinese; Dutch; French; German; Greek; Italian; Japanese; Korean; Russian; Spanish; Swedish)? Where do people speak these languages?

- | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------|---|----------|---|-----------|----|---------|
| 1 | Здравствуйте | 4 | 今日は | 7 | goede dag | 10 | Bonjour |
| 2 | 안녕하세요 | 5 | Γεια σου | 8 | Hola | 11 | Hej! |
| 3 | Ciao | 6 | 你好 | 9 | Grüezi | | |

Exercise 6. Write where these people are from. Choose one of the countries: France, Japan, England, Spain, Greece, Egypt, Russia, Brazil, Germany, Mexico, Hungary, Italy. What are their nationalities and languages? What are the capitals of their native countries?

Buenos días!	Konnichiwa!	Hello!
This is Manuel.	This is Mayumi.	This is Mike.

Guten Tag!	Salem ala gaum!	Buongiorno!
This is Johann.	This is Fatima.	This is Paolo.

Bonjour!	Hairtai!	Bom dia!
This is Jean-Paul.	This is Christina.	This is Bruno.

Privet!	Buenos dias!	Szia!
This is Ivan.	This is Pablo.	This is Janos.

Exercise 7. a) Say the nationality you associate with the things listed below.

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------|----------------|
| 1.cigarettes | 6.silk | 11.cigars |
| 2.cheese | 7.shoes | 12.guitar |
| 3.carpets | 8.rugby | 13.restaurants |
| 4.coffee | 9.goulash | |
| 5.tortillas | 10.tulips | |

(Dutch, Mexican, Brazilian, Thai, Turkish, Italian, Chinese, Cuban, Swiss, Welsh, Hungarians, Persian, Spanish)

b) Say the word you think best goes with each of the words below. Compare your answers with your partners'.

bacon	perfume	motor bikes	islands	weather
beer	whiskey	football	butter	dolls

c) What nationality are the people who have that kind of money in their pockets?

yen	markka	zloty	dollar
rial	rouble	drachma	euro

d) In which countries would you find these dishes most often and what nationality are the people eating them?

satay sauce	kangaroo-tail soup	hamburger
couscous	chicken liver	fish and chips
kebabs	pastries with nuts	raw fish
smorgos	pasta	curry
white chocolate	felafel	
brown cheese	eggroll	

e) Can you give the nationality of the following people?

Hans Christian Andersen	Bjorn Borg
Lech Walesa	Pablo Picasso
Kemal Ataturk	Elton John

Exercise 8. Answer the following questions:

1. Write down three countries where the first language is English.
2. What language is spoken in Brazil?
3. What are people from Holland called?
4. Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland.
5. What language is spoken in Saudi Arabia?
6. What nationality are people from Sweden?
7. What language is spoken in Mexico?
8. Write down the names of the countries next to your country.
9. What are people from Egypt called?
10. What is the first language in Israel?
11. Where do people speak Mandarin?
12. Write down the name of your country, the name for people from your country, the word for your language.

Exercise 9. Answer the following questions using the list below (quiz):

1. Which language in the world is spoken by most people?
2. Which language has the largest vocabulary?
3. Which is the oldest written language?
4. Which sub-continent has the largest number of languages?
5. Which language has no irregular verbs?
6. Which language is the largest encyclopaedia printed?
7. Which language has the most letters in its alphabet?

(It is: Spanish/Cambodian/English/Egyptian/Esperanto/Mandarin/Chinese/Indian)

Listening

Listening 1.

(Headway beginner (Student's book), Unit 2, t. 2.6)

Exercise. Listen to the tape and complete the table:

Country	City
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	

Model: Tokyo is in

Listening 2.

(Headway beginner (Student's book), Unit 2, t. 2.4)

Exercise. Listen to the tape and say:

- where these people are from; **Add:**
- what their nationalities are;
- what the capitals of their native countries are;
- what languages they are speaking.

Name	Country	Capital	Nationality	Language
Rick				
Sonia				
Jack				
Sergio				
Marie				
Kim				

Listening 3.

(Headway beginner (Student's book), Unit 2, t. 2.8)

Exercise. Listen to the tape and say where the people are from:

Name	Country
Gerard	
Akemi	
Charles	
Bud	
Loretta	
Jason	

What's your address?

Active Words

to live at
 address
 number
 street / avenue / square / road
 country / city / town / village

- Where do you live?
- I live at number 15, Pushkin Street in Brest.
- And what's your address?
- My address is: 43, Lenin Street, Minsk, Belarus, 220089.
- What is your e-mail?
- It's kuznmaria@rambler.ru.
- Can you give me your cousin's address, please?
- Yes. It's 64 Brynland Road, Bristol.
- And how do you spell Brynland?
- B-R-Y-N-L-A-N-D.

Address on the envelope

Mr. Anthony Worrall 10, Downing Street London W1 9FL UK	title (Mr., Mrs., Ms) + first name + surname number, street name town / city postcode country
---	---

Exercise 1. In pairs make up the dialogues as in the example above.

1. A: Miss Norman / 57, Fawnbrake Avenue
 B: Miss Baley / 15 Welholme Road, Oxford
2. A: Mr Crocker / 95 Leigham Street
 B: Mr Wood / 17 Lincoln Road, London

Exercise 2. Study the information and say where these 2 people live:

The Scotland Bank Account

CURRENT ACCOUNT STATEMENT

Account name JS Burden
 Account number 89387239
 Branch Edinburgh Dundas St
 Tel 0131 663 1890

225 1 of 3 W042 UPA3 57033 00638

Mr J S Burden
 33b Stephen Street
 Edinburgh
 EH3 8AG

Eva Ejsmond

43 Smith Street

London SW3 4EP

England

Exercise 3. Look at the letter to Santa Claus. How would you write your address?

Dear Santa Claus,
Could you please bring me a map of the world for Christmas?
My address is:
Flat 3
42 Osbourne Street
Southampton Hampshire
England Great Britain
The United Kingdom The British Isles
Western Europe The Northern Hemisphere
The World The Universe
Thank you. Love Jason
P.S. It's the fourth house on the left, just past the third lamp-post, and my room is on the first floor facing the street, or if you come the back way, the second door on the right along the landing from the bathroom.

Listening

Listening. Addresses.

(Listen Carefully, unit 1, activity 1)

Exercise. Listen to people asking for the addresses of these places. Tick the correct answer.

1. American Express	890 Mount Street 819 Mount Street 89 Mount Street
2. Asia Pacific Travel	123 Waterloo Road 103 Waterloo Road 13 Waterloo Road
3. Black and Decker	603 Holloway Road 623 Hollo Way 623 Holloway Road
4. Gulf House	2 Portman Square, W1 2 Portman Street, W1 2 Portman Square, W11
5. Pan American	193 Piccadilly 153 Piccadilly 139 Piccadilly

6. Eastman Dental Hospital	256 Grayson Road 265 Grays Inn Road 256 Grays Inn Road
----------------------------	--

When were you born? How old are you?

Active Words

to be born / birthday / (to give) birth to
 baby / toddler / infant / kid / child
 teenager / adolescent / adult / grown-up
 childhood/infancy/teenage/adolescence/youth/adulthood/
 manhood/womanhood
 generation
 young / middle-aged / old / elderly / pensioner
 to look young /old for one's age / one's age
 to be 60 years old / to be a man of 60
 to be nearly / about / over / under 60
 to be in one's early / mid / late sixties
 to be (2 years) older / younger than smb.
 to be of the same age
 to be (come) of age
 to be retired
 to turn eighty
 to die /to be dead / death / funeral

A.

1.
 - William, when were you born?
 - I was born on the first of January, nineteen eighty six (1 January 1986).
2.
 - When is his son's birthday?
 - He was born on February the ninth, two thousand and three (9/2/2003).

B.

1.
 - How old are you?
 - As a matter of fact, I'm under twenty.
2.
 - What's your mother's age?
 - She is in her early forties, 42, to be exact. But she doesn't look her age.
3.
 - Is your father a middle-aged man?
 - In fact he is. He is in his mid fifties.
 - Then he is nearly (about) 55?
4.
 - Is your friend of age?

- She isn't. She is still in her teens. I think she'll come of age in December.

5.

- I think your grandfather is an elderly man, isn't he?
- Oh yes, he is over seventy now.

6.

- How old is that nice kid?
- She is a two-year-old child.

7.

- How old is your Granny?
- She is in her late sixties but she looks young for her age.

8.

- Is your friend older or younger than you?
- Neither. We are (of) the same age.

Exercise 1. Fill in appropriate words:

1. Paul isn't 2 yet, so he's still a
2. Albert was a bus driver for 40 years but now he is
3. Susan is 25, so she is in her
4. Caroline is 50 this year so she is now in her
5. Ron is 33 and his wife is 32, so they are both in
6. Joan is 75 this year, so she is quite
7. Jason was born six weeks ago, so he's a
8. Leyla is 13 this year, so she'll soon be a
9. Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes
10. 15 is often a difficult age for boys going through

Exercise 2. What do you say about a person's age if he (she) is:

1,5; 14; 16; 18; 35; 38; 40; 42; 67; 75?

Exercise 3. Here are the dates of births and deaths of some famous people. Say when they were born and when they died. Write sentences.

1. Christopher Columbus (1451-1506)
2. Elvis Presley (1935-1977)
3. Genghis Khan (1162-1227)
4. Leonardo da Vinci (1452-1519)
5. George Washington (1732-1799)
6. Ludwig van Beethoven (1770-1827)
7. Marilyn Monroe (1926-1962)
8. Bob Marley (1945-1981)
9. Vincent van Gogh (1853-1890)

10. William Shakespeare (1564-1616)

Exercise 4. Put the correct word into the gap:

(birth; birthday; born)

1. What is your place of ... ?
2. When is your ... ?
3. I was ... in Minsk.
4. She gave ... to a healthy boy.
5. Where were you ... ?

(death; die; dead; death)

6. Shakespeare ... in 1616.
7. Her father's ... came as a great surprise. He was only 45.
8. Those flowers are Throw them away.
9. Every winter many birds ... in cold weather.
10. – Is Henry Jones still alive?
– I'm sure he's He ... about a year ago.

Listening

Listening 1.

(Learning to Listen, Out-of-Class Listening 1, A)

Exercise. Listen to the tape. Mark the date of birth opposite the names that you hear. Then make up full sentences.

Names	Dates of birth
1. William Shakespeare	
2. Diana Rose	
3. Margaret Thatcher	
4. Princess Diana	
5. Marie Antoinette	
6. Charles Darwin	
7. Agatha Christie	
8. Elvis Presley	
9. Julius Caesar	
10. Pope John Paul II	
11. Karl Marx	
12. Sophia Loren	
13. Jane Fonda	
14. Pablo Picasso	
15. Napoleon Bonaparte	
16. Michelangelo Buanarrotti	
17. Greta Garbo	

18. Ivan Lendl	
19. Mikhail Gorbachev	
20. Marilyn Monroe	

Listening 2.

(Listen Carefully, unit 3, activity 1-5)

Exercise 1. Say these years out loud. Now listen to the tape and check that you said them correctly.

1879 1952 1539 1800 1978 1760 1913
 1817 1901 1970 1929 1899 1908 1066

Exercise 2. When did these famous writers live? Listen to the tape and check that you said them correctly.

Name	Charles Dickens	D H Lawrence	Jane Austen	Ernest Hemingway	Emily Dickinson	Oscar Wilde
Born						
Died						

Exercise 3. Say these dates out loud. Then listen to the tape and check that you said them correctly.

7/6/48 8/2/85 23/3/80 2/1/84 14/11/87
 24/12/62 4/9/72 3/10/21 8/7/56 29/2/80

Exercise 4. Listen to six people saying when they were born. Write down the dates.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.

Exercise 5. When did these visitors arrive in Britain and when will they leave? Listen and circle the day each person arrived and the day they are leaving.

June						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30					

1

JUNE					
Sun	1	8	15	22	29
Mon	2	9	16	23	30
Tue	3	10	17	24	
Wed	4	11	18	25	
Thu	5	12	19	26	
Fri	6	13	20	27	
Sat	7	14	21	28	

2

JUNE						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30					

3

J U N E						
S	1	8	15	22	29	
M	2	9	16	23	30	
T	3	10	17	24		
W	4	11	18	25		
T	5	12	19	26		
F	6	13	20	27		
S	7	14	21	28		

4

JUNE						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30					

5

JUNE						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30					

6

What's your phone number?

- What is your telephone number, Julia?
- 796542 (seven nine six five four two).
- Is his phone number 944 8039 (nine double four, eight oh three nine).
- Yes, that's right.

Exercise. Write down the first name of each person in your group. Each student says his or her telephone number. Wait a few seconds, then see if you remember the number and write it down. Check the numbers.

Listening

Listening 1.

(Headway elementary (Student's book), Unit 2, t. 8)

Exercise. Write the numbers and phone numbers you hear on the tape.

Listening 2.

(Listen Carefully, unit 1, activity 1-2, 4-5)

Exercise 1. a) Read these telephone numbers out loud.

0830 941557	01 308 3378	0274 38826	051 43 378
061 352 2899	86 451283	021 616 7425	0462 623728

b) Now listen to the tape and check that you said them correctly.



Exercise 2. You will hear nine telephone numbers. Tick the numbers you hear.



1. 313557 313597	2. 743678 743670	3. 01 800 7689 01 808 7680 01 808 7688
4. 0509 23092 0519 23092	5. 0457 64332 0457 64323	6. 041 914 5389 041 904 5308 041 940 5388
7. 058 90 789 068 91 789	8. 335278 335279 339279	9. 0425 5781 0425 5718

Exercise 3. Listen to people asking Directory Enquiries for telephone numbers for the places below. Write down the correct numbers.

- John Radcliff Hospital.....
- Odeon Cinema.....
- Shangri-la Restaurant.....
- London University.....
- Country Hall.....
- British Airways.....

Exercise 4. Listen to people telephoning the places below. Did they dial the right number or not? Tick the correct box, right or wrong.

 Hong Kong Restaurant Telephone 0435 7889	 Central Library Paul Baker Head Librarian Telephone 35946	Judith Jackson HM Tax Inspector Inland Revenue 44811
1. right wrong	2. right wrong	3. right wrong

 Dillons Bookshop 01 646 1577	 BRITISH CALEDONIAN 0799 41112	KIM'S FOOD STORE 021 876 3804
4. right wrong	5. right wrong	6. right wrong

What do you do?
Active Words

job / profession / occupation

to apply for a job
to get / to find / to take on a job
to offer a job
to make a living
to do smth for a living
to work shifts / to work on the second shift
to work nine-to-five
to be on flexi-time / to be on piece-work
to get a sack / to be fired
to get a salary / pay / wages
to dismiss / to be dismissed
to retire / to be retired
to be (un)experienced / (un)qualified / (un)skilled / talented / gifted

accountant / bookkeeper

barber / hairdresser

engineer

(bus, taxi-) driver

electrician

cook

doctor, nurse

dentist

architect

farmer

fire-fighter

teacher

clerk

computer programmer

surgeon

reporter

typist

diplomat

economist

gardener

journalist

pilot

worker

baby sitter

conductor

librarian

lawyer

manager

designer

builder

policeman

photographer

salesperson

secretary

tailor / dressmaker

plumber

dustman / cleaner

newsagent

miner

clown

florist

artist

dancer

steward/ess

musician

singer

waiter / waitress

postman

cashier

interpreter

1.

- What's your job (occupation)?
- I am a teacher.

2.
 - What is he?
 - He works as a doctor.
3.
 - What does he do?
 - He is a police officer.
4.
 - Where does your father work?
 - He works at a Ministry.
5.
 - What is your Mum's salary (pay, wages)?
 - She gets (earns, makes) enough.

Exercise 1. Match the jobs (*an actor / an actress, a doctor, a manager, a waiter, a police officer, an engineer, a musician, a sportsman / a sportswoman, a teacher, an artist*) with the pictures (a-j).



Exercise 2. From these jobs choose those that are connected with:
 a) manual labour; b) creative activity; c) intellectual work.



Exercise 3. a) What job are we talking about?

- fax machine; file; stapler;
- stage; microphone; make-up

b) Think of some key words to other jobs and let your group mates guess.

Exercise 4. Match a line in A with a line in B.

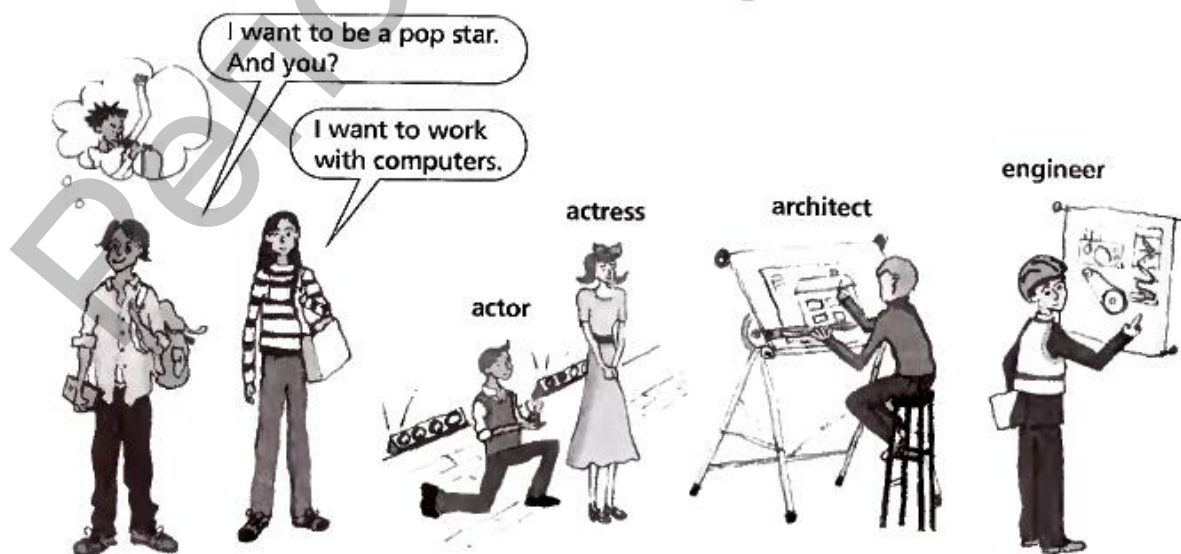
- A**
- ___ A pilot
 - ___ An interpreter
 - ___ A hairdresser
 - ___ A singer
 - ___ A nurse
 - ___ An actor
 - ___ A mechanic
 - ___ A journalist
 - ___ A receptionist

- B**
- makes or sells bread.
 - looks after people in hospital.
 - writes for a newspaper.
 - works in a hotel.
 - translates things.
 - sells things.
 - flies a plane.
 - works in a night club.
 - cuts hair.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| ___ A baker | repairs cars. |
| ___ A shop assistant | designs houses. |
| ___ A teacher | likes animals. |
| ___ A driver | works in an office with correspondence, etc. |
| ___ A gardener | knows how to make lessons interesting. |
| ___ A businessman | knows how to change his or her voice. |
| ___ A photographer | sells meat. |
| ___ A secretary | repairs water-pipes. |
| ___ An engineer | likes selling. |
| ___ A vet | grows food in a field. |
| ___ A doctor | builds houses. |
| ___ A salesperson | likes working with people. |
| ___ A writer | looks after people's teeth. |
| ___ An actor or actress | has a good sense of direction. |
| ___ A shop assistant | sells vegetables. |
| ___ A primary-school teacher | likes working outside. |
| ___ A builder | likes working alone. |
| ___ An architect | makes films. |
| ___ A butcher | is able to type. |
| ___ A dentist | has a camera. |
| ___ A farmer | likes children. |
| ___ A greengrocer | wants to help people. |
| ___ A plumber | is good at mathematics. |
| ___ A secretary | is interested in money. |

Exercise 5. a) Study the pictures and define the function of each job. Use the previous exercise as a model.

Model: A worker is a person who does a job that needs no training.





newsreader



TV game host



pop singer



musician



teacher

student



waitress



waiter



computer programmer



electrician



scientist

athlete



footballer



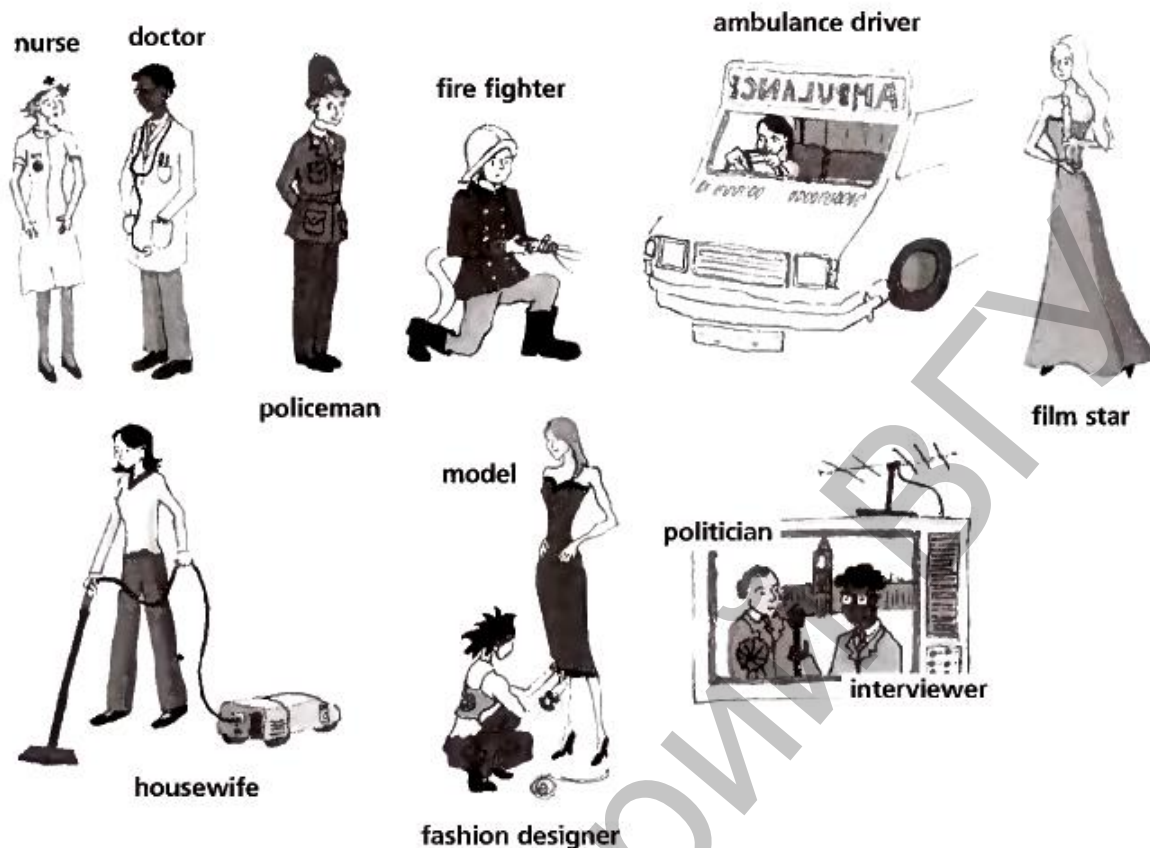
businessman



secretary



businesswoman



b) Think of the definition of a job and let your group-mates guess it.

Exercise 6. In pairs discuss your relatives' jobs. Use the dialogues below as models:

1. –What's your sister's occupation?
–She is a conductor.
2. –What does your uncle do?
–He works as an engineer.
3. –Has your niece got any occupation? What does she do for a living?
–She is learning to be an interpreter.

Exercise 7. Mime a certain occupation and let the students of your group guess what occupation it is. When your group mates ask you questions, you may answer Yes/No. You nod in agreement, shake in disagreement.

Listening

Listening 1.

(Headway elementary (Student's book), Unit 2, t. 10)

Exercise. Listen to the text about Martin Peters' family. Fill in the chart.

Name	Member, age	Occupation
Martin		
Jennifer		
Alison		

Andy		
Joe		

Listening 2.

(Listen Carefully, unit 12, activity 1-4)

Exercise 1. Listen to the tape and put down the occupations (24) in your exercise books. Check your spelling. Choose five that seem the most interesting to you. Why?

Exercise 2. You will hear people describing some of the things they do at work. Listen and tick the activities they describe.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. interview people | 5. collect post |
| describe people | deliver post |
| 2. collect guests | 6. sell TV sets |
| take guests on tours | repair TV sets |
| 3. fill in forms | 7. check machines |
| type letters | mends machines |
| 4. sell houses | 8. take telephone calls |
| buy houses | make telephone calls |

Exercise 3. You will hear people talking about their occupations. Listen and number 6 occupations below from 1-6.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| typist..... | mechanic..... |
| hairdresser..... | nurse..... |
| actor..... | pilot..... |
| engineer..... | university lecturer..... |
| hotel receptionist..... | computer programmer..... |

Exercise 4. You will hear people talking about the jobs they had and the jobs they have now. Listen and underline their present job.

1. nurse / social worker
2. shop assistant / librarian
3. driver / tour guide
4. receptionist / nurse
5. bank clerk / computer programmer
6. mechanic / lorry driver
7. office manager / university lecturer

Consolidation

Exercise 1. Read the information. Complete the questions below and give full answers.



Name **Amy Roberts**

Country **England**

Address **18, Market Street,
Manchester**

Phone number **0161 929 5837**

Age **20**

Job **Student**

Married? **No**



1. What's her ... ?	
2. Where's she ... ?	
3. What's her ... ?	
4. What's her ... ?	
5. How ... is she?	
6. What's her ... ?	
7. Is she ... ?	

Exercise 2. Write the words on the identity card. Ask and answer the questions about Rosalinda Cantarelli in pairs.



Exercise 3. Study the information and talk about Harry and Sally.



Harry

age

- 0 Born 1970
- 11 Went to Loughborough Grammar School for 6 years
- 18 Went to London University for 3 years
- 19 Started going out with Suzie
Ended Christmas 1993
- 22 Went to live in Paris
Feb–July 1992
- 23 Met Sally at a party
- 24 Got a job in a record shop
- 25 Married Sally 23 March 1995
Promoted to store manager of the record shop Autumn 1995
- 26 Bought a house in Wimbledon

Sally

age

- 0 Born 1967 in Ontario, Canada
- 11 Joined a drama group
Start of a life-long passion
- 15 Came to live in England
summer 1982
- 19 Went to Teacher Training College for 3 years
- 23 Taught in Poland for two years
- 24 Met and married Paul
August 1991
Had a daughter, Polly,
born 13 May 1992
- 25 Came back to England with Polly but without Paul 1992
- 26 Divorced Paul
Started teaching in a school in London Sept 1993
Met Harry Christmas 1993

Exercise 4. Translate into English.

1. Как вас зовут?
2. Как пишется ваша фамилия по буквам?
3. У вас есть прозвище?
4. Это не настоящее его имя, это его псевдоним.
5. Из какой вы страны? – Я из Беларуси.
6. Какой ваш адрес? – Я живу по адресу улица Ленина, 35.
7. Сколько ей лет? – Ей далеко за сорок.
8. Кто он по профессии? – Он журналист и хорошо зарабатывает.
9. Когда вы родились? – Я родился 28 апреля 1976 года.
10. Ты женат? – Нет, я не женат.

Listening

Listening 1

(New Headway beginner (Student's book), Unit 3, t. 3.7)

Exercise. Listen to the conversations and complete the chart:

Name	Giovanni Tomba	Diana Black
Country		
City / town		
Phone number		
Age		
Job		
Married		

Listening 2

(Cutting Edge elementary, Module 1, t. 1.7)

Exercise 1. Listen to two conversations and then:

- Complete the information about Bruno.
- Act out the dialogues in pairs.
- Interview another student and complete the information below.

a First name.....	f Married/Single.....
b Surname.....	g Job.....
c Address.....	h Nationality.....
d Age.....	i Languages.....
e Telephone Number.....	j Country of birth.....

Exercise 2. Fill in application form.

Applicant

Title Mr Mrs Miss Ms

Surname

First name(s)

Date of birth

Country of origin

Present address

Post code

When did you move to this address?

Permanent address (if different from above)

Post code

Telephone no. (home)

Telephone no. (work)

Marital Status

Single Married Divorced Widowed

No. of dependent children

Residential details

Owned Rented

Where do you reside?

With parents With a partner Alone

Employment status

Employed full-time Employed part-time

Self-employed Unemployed Retired

Income details

Annual income £

Signature

Date

Section B. Family Relationships

Active Words

1. Relations by birth / by marriage.

an average, small, large family
to consist of
to be related to smb.
relatives on mother's, father's side
distant (remote) / close relations
parents
father / dad / daddy
mother / mum / mummy
children, daughter, son
(grand): parents, father, mother
(grand): children, son, daughter
(great): grandparents, grandchildren
sister, brother
aunt, uncle
nephew, niece
cousin
orphan
twins, triplets
spouse, husband, wife
(ex-): husband, wife
(step): mother, father, sister, brother, son, daughter
(foster): mother, father, child
(god): mother, father, son, daughter
(mother, father, brother, sister, son, daughter)-in-law
(half-): sister, brother
to bring up
to adopt
to take after smb. / to be a copy of smb. / to be a replica of smb.

2. Marriage / Marital Status

(boy, girl)-friend
to fall in / out of love with smb.
to date smb.
to court smb.
engagement / to be engaged to smb.
fiancé, fiancée
proposal / to propose to smb.
to marry for love, for convenience
(civil) marriage / to be (get) married to smb.
misalliance
(silver, golden) wedding

wedding ring
bride, bridegroom
best man / bridesmaid
honey-moon
divorce / to divorce
spinster, bachelor
widow, widower, widowed
to be divorced / to be separated
to be (un)married / to be single

3. Relations in the Family

to admire smb.
to be attached to smb.
to be devoted to smb.
to be close to smb.
to blame smb.
to (dis)agree with smb.
to (dis)approve of smb.
to quarrel with smb./ to argue with smb.
to get on well with smb.
to tell smb. off
to be strict about smth.
to avoid conflicts
to find support and understanding
to bring up smb.
to have / to give a strict upbringing
to have much in common
to have family traditions
to have duties about the house
to help smb. (to be helpful to smb.)
to rely on smb. / to trust smb.
to respect smb.
to take care of smb.
to be responsible of
to worry about smb.

awful / caring / close / cordial / difficult / distant / frank / friendly / hostile /
intolerant / loving / problem / reliable / respectful / warm / tolerant relations

4. Sex

male
female
man (men)
woman (women)
member of the opposite sex

5. Religion / Faith

Orthodox
Catholic
Christian
Moslem
to believe in God

Vocabulary Exercises

Exercise 1. Say what relation is:

your mother's sister
your mother's brother
your father's brother
your mother's brother
your sister's daughter
your sister's son
your brother's daughter
your brother's son
your aunt's son
your aunt's daughter
your brother's wife
your sister's husband
your husband's parents
your aunt's daughter
your uncle's son
your parent's parents
your grandparent's parents

to you



Model: My mother's sister is ...

Exercise 2. a) Study a family tree for some of Anne and Paul Mason's relatives (relations).

Paul is Anne's **husband** and Sarah and Jack's **father**.

Anne is Paul's **wife** and Sarah and Jack's **mother**.

Anne and Paul are Sarah and Jack's **parents**.

Sarah is Anne and Paul's **daughter**. Jack is their **son**.

Sarah is Jack's **sister**. Jack is Sarah's **brother**.

Henry is Sarah and Jack's **grandfather**. Diana is their **grandmother**.

Henry and Diana are Sarah and Jack's **grandparents**.

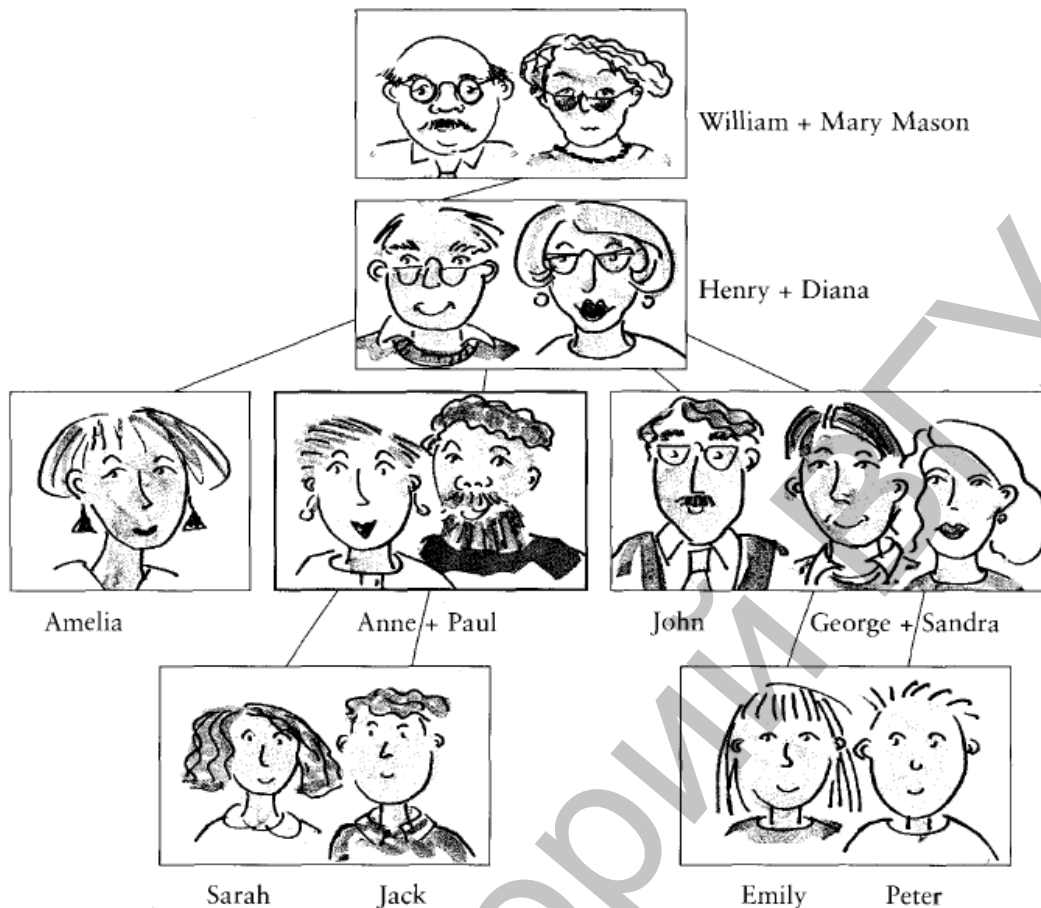
Sarah is Henry and Diana's **granddaughter**. Jack is their **grandson**.

John and George are Sarah and Jack's **uncles**.

Amelia and Sandra are Sarah and Jack's **aunts**.

Sarah is Amelia, John, George and Sandra's **niece**. Jack is their **nephew**.

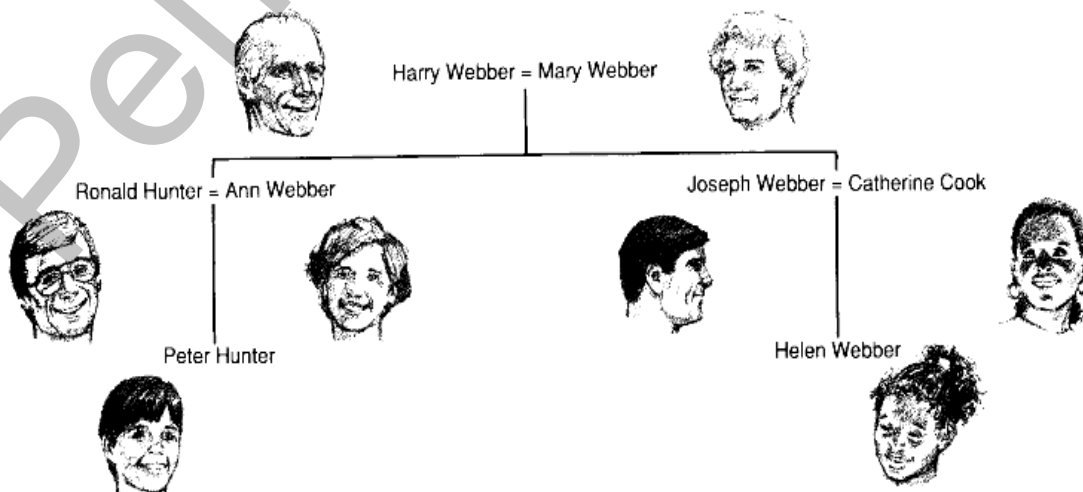
Emily and Peter are Sarah and Jack's **cousins**.



b) Complete the sentences.

1. Emily is Peter's
2. Peter is Emily's
3. Anne is Emily's
4. Paul is Peter's
5. Diana is Peter's
6. Henry is Emily's
7. Peter is Paul's
8. Emily is Paul's
9. Sandra is Emily's
10. Sandra is George's
11. Sarah is Peter's

Exercise 3. Look at the family tree. Then use some of the words below to complete the sentences.

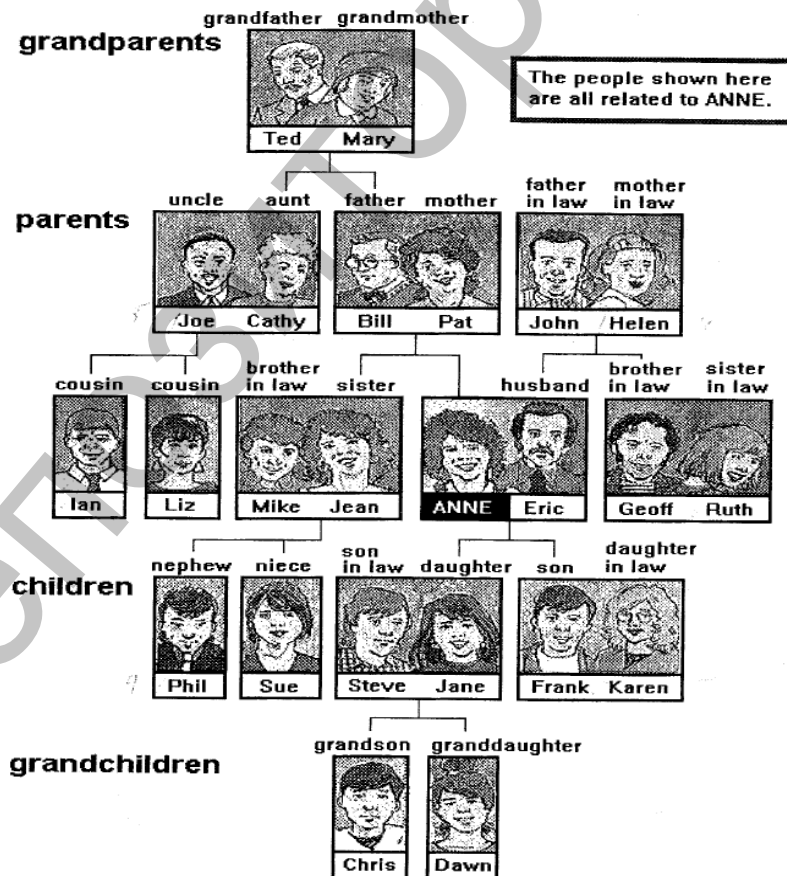


wife; husband; father; mother; brother; sister; son; daughter;
 aunt; uncle; niece; nephew; cousin; grandfather; grandmother;
 grandson; granddaughter; brother-in-law; sister-in-law;
 father-in-law; mother-in-law; son-in-law; daughter-in-law

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Harry is Ann's | 7. Joseph is Ann's |
| 2. Mary is Joseph's | 8. Helen is Harry's |
| 3. Harry is Mary's | 9. Catherine is Harry's |
| 4. Ann is Ronald's | 10. Peter is Helen's |
| 5. Helen is Catherine's | 11. Catherine is Peter's |
| 6. Peter is Mary's | 12. Mary is Ronald's |

**Exercise 4. Study Anne's family tree and
 a) Complete the sentences:**

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Ted and Marry are Anne's ... | 6. Anne is Liz's ... |
| 2. Cathy is Bill's ... | 7. Mike is Eric's ... |
| 3. Cathy is Pat's ... | 8. Phil is Anna's ... |
| 4. Helen is Anne's ... | 9. Anne is Karen's ... |
| 5. Ruth is Eric's ... and Anne's ... | 10. Anne is Chris and Dawn's ... |



b) Answer the following questions:

1. How many children do Ted and Mary have?
2. Who are Anne's parents?
3. Is Anne married?
4. Who are John and Helen?
5. How many uncles do Jane and Frank have?
6. Could you name the people which are not related?

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences filling the gaps with the words from the list: *widow, spinster, brother-in-law, lover, funeral, father-in-law and mother-in-law, adult, bridegroom, toddler, single, grandparents, widower, uncle and aunt, best man, bachelor, divorcee, spouse, niece, twin, bride, sister-in-law, fiancée, nephew, honeymoon, step-mother, cousins.*

- a. A woman's ... is the man who is engaged to be married to her.
- b. ... are people who have been married but have divorced and are single.
- c. A ... is a woman whose husband has died.
- d. A man whose wife has died is called a
- e. A ... is a formal term for husband and wife.
- f. Someone's ... is a person other than wife with whom they have sexual relationship.
- g. A ... is a rather old-fashioned word for an unmarried woman over forty.
- h. The son of your brother or sister is your
- i. A woman on the day of her marriage is a
- j. A young child who is learning to walk is a
- k. One of two children born at the same time is a
- l. The daughter of your brother or sister is your
- m. A person who is fully grown is an
- n. At a wedding, the friend of the bridegroom is a
- o. The sister of the person you marry is a
- p. A man on the day of his wedding
- q. If you haven't got a partner you are
- r. A religious service for a dead person is a
- s. ... is a holiday after a wedding.
- t. Your parents' parents are your
- u. Your parents' brother and sister are your... .
- v. Your aunt's / uncle's children are your... .
- w. The father and mother of the person you marry are your.... .
- x. The brother of the person you marry is
- y. A ... is a word for an unmarried man over forty.
- z. Your father remarries, so you have a

Exercise 6. Read about Fiona and Howard and fill in the gaps with proper words (see ex. 2).



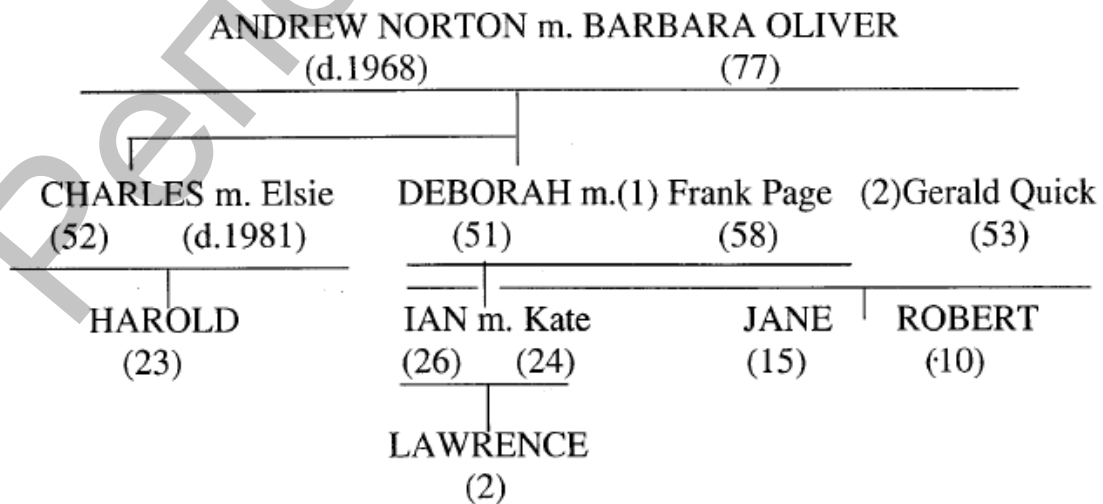
Sandra has a brother, Howard. Howard is Peter's 1... . Howard's wife is Emily's 2... . They are all very good friends. But Henry has a sister, Fiona. Henry is Fiona's 3... . Fiona does not get on well with William, her 4... but William loves Fiona's three sons who are his 5... . Fiona's boys are Paul's 6... but they do not see each other very often. Then there is Anne's mother, Mrs. Scott. She is Sarah and Jack's 7... . She and Anne, her 8..., like to play golf together.

Exercise 7. In each column find the word with the more general meaning:

- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|---------|-----------|
| 1. son | 2. Orthodox | 3. male | 4. name |
| aunt | Catholic | female | surname |
| parent | religion | sex | pet name |
| relative | Moslem | Moslem | nick name |

Exercise 8. In Britain it is normal for the wife to take the husband's name, and for the children to have only the father's surname. So Barbara is Mrs. Barbara Norton, and Deborah, when she was single, was called Deborah Norton.

Study the family tree and answer the questions.



- What are the full names of the following: Deborah, Harold, Ian, Jane, Lawrence?
- Which member of the family is a widow?
- Which is a widower?
- What relation are the following members of the family to Barbara? Match the name to the relationship.

Charles	daughter
Deborah	granddaughter
Gerald	grandson
Harold	great-grandson
Jane	son
Lawrence	son-in-law

- What relation are the following members of the family to Deborah? Match the name to the relationship.

Barbara	brother
Charles	ex-husband
Frank	husband
Gerald	nephew
Harold	daughter
Jane	mother

- What relation are the following members of the family to Ian? Match the name to the relationship.

Barbara	cousin
Charles	father
Frank	grandfather
Gerald	half-sister
Harold	stepmother
Jane	uncle

- Who is / was Harold's aunt, Lawrence's grandfather, Frank's stepdaughter, Gerald's stepson, Charles's niece, Kate's father-in-law, Robert's sister-in-law?

Exercise 9. Read the following information about Kate's relatives and make her family tree.

- 1)Margaret and Amanda are sisters.
- 2)Kate's parents are called Colin and Emily.
- 3)Emily's brother is called David.
- 4)David is Kate's uncle.
- 5)Rose and Paul have three grandchildren: Kate, Margaret and Amanda.
- 6)Amanda's grandparents are called Paul and Rose.
- 7)Kate is Margaret's cousin.
- 8)Pole and Rose have two children: Emily and David.

Exercise 10. Read the text and put each of the following words in its correct place: *widow, stepchildren, fiancée, brother, widower, name, younger, close, spinster, get married, cousins, bachelor, distant.*

My ... is Tom Smiles. I'm the eldest of all the children. My second ... is Jack. The youngest is Michael. My ... sister is two years younger than me. Some time ago she got engaged. Her ... is Mr. Brown. They are going to ... next month.

I have many relatives. My grandparents are dead. But I have a number of ... and ... relatives: two uncles, four aunts and about a dozen cousins. One of my ... has lost her husband. She is a An uncle of mine has been a ... for many years but he married recently. His wife is very kind to her ... and treats them as a real mother. One of my aunts remained unmarried and therefore she is what the English call a ... or a single lady. An uncle of mine is also single. He is an old

Exercise 11. Put the correct form of the word into the gap:

marriage to get (to be) married to marry

1. A. – Are you ... ?
B. – No, I'm single.
2. A. – Whatever happened to Anne?
B. – She ... a man she met on holiday.
3. I'm never going to I prefer being on my own.
4. Darling, I love you. Will you ... me?
5. We had a lovely wedding. We ... in spring. There were a lot of flowers.
6. Did you hear? James and Lisa ... last week.
7. She ... to an architect. They ... last year.
8. They say, Alice's ... is a lucky one. When did she ... Robert?
9. I see Susie is happy in her She is ... to Mrs Johnson's son, isn't she?

Exercise 12. Insert prepositions where necessary.

1. Robbie's cousin is married ... an architect. She says she isn't happy ... her marriage.
2. John married ... Kate two years ago.
3. Jane is married ... two children, Susie and Betty by name.
4. - Is Lucy any relation ... you? - Yes, she is a close relation ... mine. She's my elder sister.
5. My elder brother Nick has a family ... his own. He married ... a doctor whose name is Alice Brent. They have a three-year-old kid, Kate by name. She is the pet... the family.
6. Bob and Leanne are going ... together.
7. We drank a toast ... their happiness.
8. He fell ... love ... her at once.
9. She's engaged ... a policeman.
10. His parents don't approve ... her.

Exercise 13. Put each of the following words in its correct place in the passage below.

bride engaged bridegroom consent wedding proposal
civil reception honeymoon propose toast get married

One evening, although he was nervous, Joe decided to _____ to his girlfriend, Linda. She accepted his _____, they became _____ and he gave her a ring. After a year they had saved enough money to _____ (they were both over 18 so they didn't need their parents _____). Some people have a religious ceremony with a priest, but Joe and Linda decided on a _____ ceremony in a registry office. On the day of the _____ Linda, the _____, was very calm, but Joe, the _____, was nervous. Afterwards, at the _____, the speeches were made and the guests drank a _____ to the happy couple, who finally left for a _____ in Spain.

Exercise 14. Fill in the gaps with the words from the box:

in after of to born on

(1)..... 1993 Anne got married (2)..... Robert Smith. Unfortunately, Robert's grandmother, Rosemary Smith, died (3)..... old age soon after their wedding. Robert and Anne were (4)..... their honeymoon when she died. Anne's baby-daughter was (5)..... two years later. They called the baby, Rosemary, (6)..... Robert's grandmother.

Exercise 15. Complete the sentences, using the correct word. To help you, the first letter of each word is given.

A Wedding I Have Attended

My c_____, Harold, got married last weekend and I was a b_____ at the w_____. All my family were very happy, because we have known the b_____, Mary Surliffe, for a long time, and Harold had been going out with her for a year before they became e_____.

Mary's p_____s died in a car crash when she was very young, so she became an o_____, but her b_____ Tom is a kind man and has always looked after her. When Harold and Mary were making the list of i_____s for the wedding, of course, they invited all the r_____s and some friends and n_____s, but we wondered if my m_____ 's first h_____, my s_____ Mr. Page, would accept, because he lives in Newcastle and my g_____ has never forgiven him because of the d_____. But he did come, perhaps because my brother, his s_____ - was going to be the b_____m_____. I wondered what my f_____ would say, but Daddy is very sensible and he said he hadn't got any time for silly family quarrels.

Everyone was very happy during the m_____ service, except my U_____ Charles, the b_____’s father. He was a little sad – I suppose because my A_____ Elsie died a few years ago and he was thinking about her.

Afterwards, we went to the r_____ at the King’s Arms and had a big lunch and everyone made speeches. Then the b_____ cut the cake, with Harold helping her, and they went off to their h_____ in Ibiza and left us to dance all evening. My Uncle Charles cheered up and came up to me and said, “I must dance with my n_____, the prettiest girl in the room”, so I felt very pleased.

Exercise 16. Choose the most suitable word to complete each sentence.

1. I was in Scotland but I (grew up; raised; brought; rose) in Wales.
2. Edward was named after one of his father’s distant (family; brothers; members; relations).
3. Jane and Brian got married a year after they got (divorced; proposed; engaged; separated).
4. Julie had a terrible (row; discussion; argue; dispute) with her parents last night.
5. Is Brenda married or (spinster; alone; bachelor; single)? I don’t like to ask her.
6. Parents have to try hard to understand the younger (generation; people; adolescents; teenagers).
7. My father likes to be called a senior citizen, not an old age (person; relative; gentleman; pensioner).

Exercise 17. Match the English idioms with their Russian equivalents.

Use them in the sentences of your own.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. to be head over heels in love | A. маменькин сынок |
| 2. extremes meet | B. быть под каблуком |
| 3. a mother's boy | C. с глаз долой, из сердца вон |
| 4. to be out of hand | D. строить глазки |
| 5. to be under smb's thumb | E. действовать на нервы |
| 6. out of sight, out of mind | F. с первого взгляда |
| 7. to make eyes at smb | G. жить как кошка с собакой |
| 8. to get on one’s nerves | H. отбиться от рук |
| 9. at first sight | I. быть по уши влюбленным |
| 10. to lead a cat and a dog life | J. противоположности сходятся |

Exercise 18. Read the following three interviews and answer the questions:

1. What kind of relationship do the children have with their parents?
2. Are their parents strict?
3. What is it to be a good parent?

Interview with 16-year-old daughter Helen

Interviewer: How do you get on with your parents?

Helen: I think I get on with them very well, really. We don't always see eye to eye on some things, like boyfriends - they don't always approve of them - but on the whole they're very understanding. If I have a personal problem, I think I can confide in them, and if I am in trouble I know I can rely on them to help me.

Interviewer: How strict are your parents?

Helen: Well, my Dad's quite strict about staying out late at night, but if I'm nice to him, he lets me come home a bit later. My Mum's always telling me to tidy up my bedroom and put things away after I use them, and I have to do some of the housework. But if I compare them with other parents I know, they aren't very strict.

Interviewer: And who are you most like in your family?

Helen: Oh, I think I take after my mother. Everybody says we're both very independent and strong-willed. I like to have my own way a lot of the time, but I'm not spoilt. I don't always get my own way. And my parents always tell me off if I do anything wrong.

Interview with 17-year-old son David

Interviewer: How do you get on with your parents?

David: Oh, we really get on well.

Interviewer: How strict are your parents?

David: They can be very strict at times. I told my Dad I wanted a motorbike, but he said it was out of the question - it was too dangerous. My mother is strict about keeping things tidy.

Interviewer: How do you get on with your sister?

David: I never agree with what she says, so we are always arguing. We're not very close, but I get on all right with her. I think I'm much closer to my mother.

Interview with mother

Interviewer: What's it like to be a parent?

Mother: Bringing up children is very difficult. You always worry about them. You have to be very patient; sometimes they just don't listen to you. But the main thing is to enjoy your children while they are young because they grow up so quickly nowadays.

Interviewer: How strict are you with your children?

Mother: I suppose I'm reasonably strict. They can't always do what they like, and I tell them off when they do something wrong.

Interviewer: And what is the secret of being a good parent?

Mother: I think you have to give them confidence and let them know you love them. You have to set a good example through your own behaviour.

Interviewer: And what do you want for your children in the future?

Mother: I want them to look back on their childhood as a very happy time.

Exercise 19. Translate into English.

1. У меня нет близких родственников, но много дальних родственников.
2. Катя самая младшая сестра - студентка университета. А самая старшая сестра Женя уже замужем. Они хорошо ладят друг с другом.
3. Лена - моя лучшая подруга. Мы с ней одного возраста. Мы обе изучаем биологию в университете.
4. Моя младшая сестра увлекается игрой на гитаре и коллекционированием марок.
5. Мой старший брат женат. У него своя семья. Он женат на своей однокурснице. Они поженились три года тому назад. Их двухлетняя дочурка - моя любимая племянница.
6. Я опять поссорилась с родителями. На этот раз они не одобрили мою прическу.
7. Я уважаю своих родителей, хотя у нас различные взгляды на современную жизнь.
8. Мои родители не разрешают мне гулять на улице допоздна. Они всегда ругают меня за это.
9. Я хорошо уживаюсь (лажу) со своей сестрой. Мы не всегда сходимся во взглядах, например, в отношении моды и музыки, но я всегда могу на нее положиться.
10. Я понимаю, что он поддерживает Николая.
11. Петя - самый маленький в семье. Его никогда не наказывают за плохое поведение. Боюсь, он вырастет таким испорченным.
12. Много лет назад у девушек было довольно строгое воспитание.

Reading

Reading 1.

Exercise. Read the text and use the words *to spend, to learn, to introduce, to help, busy, different, typical, country, garden, together* in their proper places.

My name is Alexander Novikov. I am 16. I live in Moscow. I am a schoolboy.

Now let me ... my family. Our family is neither large nor small. We are four in the family: my father, my mother my sister and me. I think we are a ... Russian family. I have two grandmothers and a grandfather, but they don't live with us.

My father is 42 years old. He is an army officer. He is very ... at this work, but when he has some free time, he is at home and we ... this time together. My father can do many things and sometimes I think he can do everything: he can fix different electric and radio appliances, he can cook, he grows fruits and vegetables in the

My mother is 39. She is a doctor. She likes her work, and her patients love and respect her. My mother runs the house, she takes care of us. We all love her and always ... her with the work about the house.

Though my parents have ... views on some things (sports or films) they have much in common: they are kind, honest, respectful, hard-working people. They have the same opinion about culture, education, politics, etc.

My sister is 10 years old. Her name is Natasha. She is a schoolgirl. She ... very well. She wants to be a doctor like her mother. Natasha attends music school, too. She plays the piano well and likes music very much.

I have some aunts, uncles and cousins. Some of them live in Moscow, but many of them live in different parts of our

We keep two pets at home: a dog and a parrot. We take care of them Looking after them makes us friendly and kinder to each other.

We are a good family.

Reading 2.

Exercise 1. Read the text.

We are a large and friendly family. There are six of us: grandfather, grandmother, father, mother, my younger sister and I. I have an elder sister, too, she is 22 years old, but she does not live with our family. She is married. She has a little family of her own: a husband and a child — a two-year-old boy.

Our grandfather is a scientist. He is on the wrong side of sixty, but he does not want to retire. He works at the university. He works part-time. He goes to the university two or three times a week and delivers lectures to students and does scientific work. On the days when he is at home, he works in his study, preparing for his lectures and writing a book.

Our grandmother is retired. She was a teacher and worked at school. She is the recognized head of the family. She keeps house. Of course we help her about the house: all of us do our share in daily household chores. My sister washes the dishes, sweeps and washes the floor, washes the sink in the kitchen. My work is emptying the dustbin, beating the carpets, dusting and vacuum cleaning. Our mother and father do most of the shopping. My mother and sister also do washing. But most of the cooking is done by grandmother. She is a wonderful cook, and all our family likes her cooking very much.

Father is a doctor. He works at a large hospital. Mother is an economist and she works at a bank. Both our parents are very busy. Father has a car. In the morning he drives mother to work, then he goes to his hospital. Father also always drives grandfather to work on his university days.

My sister and I go to school. We are both senior formers, so naturally school takes up a lot of our time. We spend most of the afternoons and evenings doing our homework.

At the weekend we are not so busy as on week days, and we can relax: visit or receive friends or relations or just go for a walk. I also enjoy quiet Saturday evenings, when all the members of our friendly family are at home and nobody is in a hurry, and we are quietly sitting in our large and comfortable living-room, talking, joking, discussing our everyday affairs and drinking nice hot cups of tea with something delicious prepared by grandmother.

Exercise 2. Put 10 special questions on the text.

Exercise 3. Answer the questions.

Exercise 4. Retell the text.

Reading 3. The Thomases.

Exercise 1. Read and translate the text.

Let me introduce an American family to you. It's not a large family for America; they are five - Mr. Thomas, Mrs. Thomas and their three children.

Mr. Thomas is a middle-aged, active, energetic and sociable man. He's a born artist and his profession is very interesting. He is an architect, a very talented, hard-working and experienced specialist. He has two hobbies: painting and a car. The family has got a large collection of his pictures at home.

Mrs. Thomas is a pleasant-looking woman of 40. She is rather tall, slender and doesn't look her age. She has long chestnut hair, kind green eyes and a charming smile. When she smiles you can see two nice dimples in her cheeks. She is a housewife and she runs the house and takes care of her family. She is fond of animals and the family has got two nice Persian cats, two black poodles and a large aquarium with fish. They all look after their pets.

Mr. and Mrs. Thomas have got three children: two sons and a daughter. Their first-born is Margaret. She is 20. She is a lovely sweet girl, intelligent and well-bred. She's a student, a future architect. Margaret follows in her father's footsteps. She is engaged to Fred Brown and they are going to get married soon. Margaret and Fred go in for skiing and they will spend their honeymoon in the mountains. It's their golden dream.

Robert is the elder son in the family. He is a schoolboy. He's good at maths and physics and is interested in computers. He is going to be a computer programmer. He does swimming and spends every free minute in the swimming-pool.

And now William. He is seven and he's the pet of the family. He is a bright and jolly boy.

The Thomases have many relatives: uncles, aunts and cousins. They are happy to have their grandparents who are rather old but full of life and energy. The family is happy and united.

Exercise 2. Get ready to speak about each member of the family using the chart.

Member of the family	Age	Occupation	Character	Appearance	Hobby
Mr Thomas					
Mrs Thomas					
Margaret					
Robert					
William					

Exercise 3. Retell the text according to the plan:

- a) The Thomases
- b) Mr. Thomas
- c) Mrs. Thomas
- d) Margaret
- e) Robert and William
- f) Their Relatives

Reading 4.

Exercise 1. Read the text and answer the questions below.

Hi! My name is Thomas (though my friends call me Tom). I'm fifteen. I've got a Mum, a Dad, a brother and two sisters, three aunts and uncles and two grandmothers who live in New Zealand. I'm the youngest. It is pretty dire at times when my elder sisters and brother try to boss me around, but sometimes it's OK because I get away with doing things with them - like going off up to London for the day, staying up really late to watch videos and going off to the pub for a drink (cola, of course, because I'm not 18 yet). I think there are some advantages of being the youngest. I can learn from my sisters' and brothers' mistakes, and they've fought some of the battles with my parents for freedom.

My eldest brother Mark is 20 and is studying at the university in York. My sister Laura is 18 and in her last year at school. She is doing Biology, Chemistry, Maths. She wants to become a doctor.

Liz is my other sister. She is 16. My sister Liz was born lucky. She has a beautiful smile. When she does something bad, she smiles and my parents are not angry with her. She eats a lot and does not get fat. Her favourite meal is a double cheeseburger with French fries, a milkshake, and an ice cream sundae. She does not study hard but always gets good marks. After school she does her homework in five minutes while she watches television all the time.

I'm close to all three but possibly closest to Liz. She sometimes comes to me for advice and I sometimes go to her. But I would like to have a younger brother. I'd have liked to have someone to have a laugh with, someone to take out to football with me. My sisters and Mark don't always share my sense of humour.

My Dad is a civil servant and works in central London. Mum is a teacher and works in Corydon, a town on the outskirts of London.

If I go out, my parents like to know where I'm going, who I'm with and what time I'm coming home, but that's fair enough.

Of all my relatives best of all I like my Granny Dotty. She loves adventure. On her sixtieth birthday she went mountain climbing in the Alps. On her seventieth birthday she went on a trip to the North Pole. When she was eighty, she drove, alone, across the United States. She loves to eat chocolate. We all wonder what she will do when she is ninety.

Exercise 2. Answer the questions:

1. How many children are there in the family?
2. Who is the oldest and who is the youngest?
3. How old are they?
4. What are the advantages and disadvantages of being the youngest child in the family?
5. Is the boy happy to be the youngest?
6. Are the children close to each other?
7. What other relatives are mentioned in the text?
8. Who is the most outstanding person in the family?

Listening

Listening 1. My Old Dad

(The Cambridge English Course (Student's book), unit 14A, 9)

Exercise 1. a) Listen to the song and try to write down the verbs.



1. We never.....him in the mornings
And he alwayshome late
Then he.....and..... the paper
And.....the crossword while he.....
2. He neverus with our homework
But he.....me how to swim
And he.....me to be patient
I guess I..... a lot from him

My old dad
He was one of the good guys
He was nobody's hero
But he was special to me

3. Every summer we.....to Blackpool
Except when he.....unemployed
He.....to.....and.....the sunset
That.....one thing we both.....
4. Healways very gentle
Nothing ever.....him mad
He..... never rich or famous
But I..proud of my old dad

My old dad
He was one of the good guys
He was nobody's hero
But he was special to me

b) Tell students about someone in your family that you are proud of.

Listening 2. How Families Start

(Headway Elementary (Student's book), unit 8, t.45)

Exercise 1. Listen to Wendy Mint's and Trevor Richards's love stories.

Divide into two groups and answer the questions about your couple:

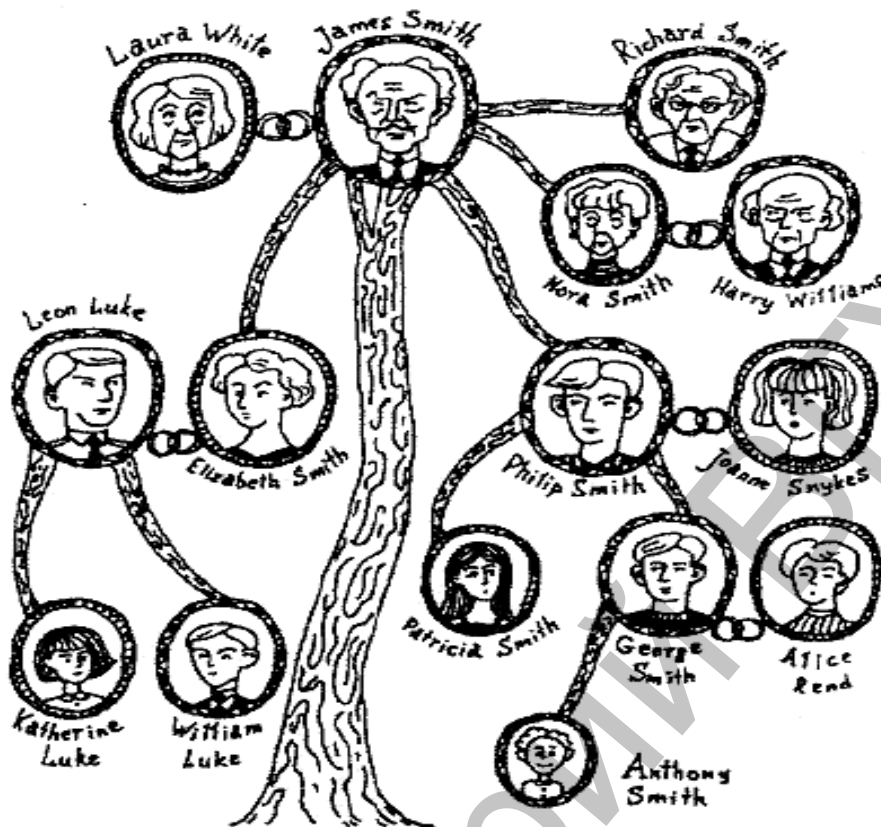
- When did they meet?
- How did they meet?
- What is his / her job?
- Was he / she at work when they met?
- What did he / she like about him / her?
- Are they both English?
- Who is shy?
- Wendy talks about a restaurant. Trevor talks about a cake. Why?
- When did they get married?
- Do they work together?
- Do they have any children?

Exercise 2. Imagine that you are Oliver or Astrid. Tell the story of how you met your husband / wife?

Speaking

Exercise 1. Study the family tree and say how all these people are related to each other. The pictures of marriage partners are connected with wedding rings.

*Model: Richard Smith is Laura White and James Smith's son. Or:
James Smith is a son to Richard Smith and Laura White.*



Exercise 2. Speak about your own family. The questions below may help you.

- 1) Who are you? What are you? When and where were you born?
- 2) How old are you? Who is the eldest/ the youngest in your family? How old is your father/ mother/ sister/ brother?
- 3) Do you live with your parents? What are your parents? What are their characters? What do they look like?
- 4) Are you married? Who are you married to?
- 5) Have you got grandparents? How old are they? Are they in good health? Where do they live?
- 6) What other relatives do you have? What do they do? What can you say about them and their families?
- 7) What is your occupation now? What are you interested in? Have you got any hobbies? Are you fond of sports?

Exercise 3. Make your family tree. Speak on your close and distant relatives. Use the models:

1. My elder sister, Helen by name, has a family of her own. She is married to her schoolmate. They got married five years ago. They have two children: a boy and a girl. Their names are John and Marry. John is four and Marry is two years old.

2. Helen is my cousin. She works as a typist. She is married. She married a doctor whose name is John Brown. They have a three-year-old child, Kate by name. Kate is the pet of the family.
3. My uncle John is in his early forties. He isn't married. He is single. He works as a sailor and lives in the Far East.

Exercise 4. a) Read a story by Gloria Spitz, who is English. She describes how she met her American husband, Hank, in the 1940s. Then complete the text using the words in the box.

•like in the films	•so different from
•time we danced	•our lives changed
•didn't talk	•I couldn't look at him
•was very worried	•gave us chocolates
•away in the war	•came back for me

Well, I was sixteen. It was 1942 and my mother and I lived in a small village in the country. My father wasn't there. He was _____. Suddenly, on the 26th January, _____. Hundreds of American soldiers came to the village. Ooh! We girls in the village loved them! They were _____ English boys. They talked to us. They _____ about cars and football. They _____ and nylon stockings. Every day was like Christmas Day! And the way they danced! Oh, they danced _____. I met Hank at the Saturday dance. I think I fell in love the first _____. I was so shy that _____, but he took me to the dance every Saturday after that. He told me he loved shy English girls. My mother _____. We didn't know American people then. In 1943 Hank went to France, but we wrote to each other. We wrote for two years and at the end of the war he _____. He took me to the States, to his home in Arizona. Well, now we have four children and twelve grandchildren!

b) Get ready to share a love story of your friends or relatives. Use the information from the stories below.

It was in 1979 when he met Anthea. He **went out with** her for three years, but towards the end they **had lots of rows** and they **split up**. In his mid twenties he met Maureen. They **fell in love** and **got married** within six months. A year later she **got pregnant** and they had their first child, a boy. As you can see, she is now **expecting** their second **child**. But sadly Sam met another woman and he **left** Maureen two months ago to live with the other woman. Maureen **remarried** only after two years.



Dear Fiona,
Thanks for all your news. Things are very much as normal here. Harry and I have **split up** – we both felt we had had enough of each other. He's **dating** a girl who was **going steady with** Paul when you were here – I think they're quite **serious** – and I'm seeing a film producer called Harvey who's waiting for his **divorce** to come through. We're more than '**just good friends**' but I don't know how long it will last. My **late husband's former mistress is marrying his first wife's third husband** on Saturday. In fact, it's going to be a **double wedding** because her **second son by her first marriage** is **getting married** to the girl he's been **sharing a flat with** for the past six months. You remember? That's her **half-brother's ex-fiancée**, the one who was **going out with** Jason back in January.
Anyway, how are you? Still the ideal couple over there in Eastbourne, are you? Do I hear **wedding bells**?
Lots of love for now,
Mandy

Exercise 5. Work with your partner and discuss the relationships with the people in your family. Use some ideas:

- How do you get on with...?
- Are you similar to anyone in your family?
- Who takes care of you?
- Are your parents strict about...?
- Who do you admire and respect in your family? Why?
- Do your parents ever tell you off?
- Can you rely on your brother / sister to support you?
- Do you have the same / different views on with your mother?
- Are you sure that your parents will always understand you?
- Can you say that you are close to your grandparents?
- Do your parents approve of your choice of ...?

Exercise 6. Look through these newspaper articles and say:

- a) What problems are mentioned in these articles?
- b) What love or family problems can people have?

c) Say whether you have had any problems like these; who helped you to solve them?

The colour of love

Even though they were boyfriend and girlfriend, Sarah and Steve never felt able to walk hand in hand down the street.

Sarah, 14, and her Afro-Caribbean boyfriend Steve, 17, used to walk 10 yards apart so that no one would guess they were going out. He was fearful of the reaction of his friends if he was seen going out with a white girl.

After five months the pressure of other people's disapproval and abuse led to the collapse of the relationship. The couple decided that they just could not go on in fear of how others behaved towards them.

Their experience is not unique to a white girl dating a black boy. The same story could have been told about a black girl dating a white boy and getting abuse from whites.

(from *The Guardian*)

Dear Lucy

Everyone has daydreams and there is nothing wrong with this. There is only a problem when you forget where dreams end and the real world begins. Don't write any more letters to him. It's a waste of time and money, and you know really that a relationship with him is impossible. For one thing he lives in California and you live in Scotland. Try to get out more and find some friends in the real world; sitting at home crying over his records won't help you. You need to find other interests and other people of your own age to talk to. Your parents clearly don't have enough time to listen. Study hard and good luck next June!

Yours Susie

Black, white, married

SOME PEOPLE think that my marriage is an abomination and should never have taken place. There are parts of the world where it would be difficult for us to live together. Friends warned me against having children and said it would be unfair to bring them into the world. So what is so special about us? Nothing at all, except that my husband is black and I am white.

Although I have been married for nine years and have two beautiful children, I am still amazed we should be

considered as having done something unusual. I marvel at the number of people who, not knowing that I have a black partner, loudly maintain that marriages in which one partner is black and the other white are doomed to failure.

Yet many of these people are from mixed backgrounds themselves: a Scot married to Pole; a Jamaican married to a Trinidadian. So what is it about a black person marrying a white person that gets them so upset?

(Nicola Jones, *The Independent*)

Dear Pam

If all you say is true, it is remarkable that you are still together. But you are not helping your relationship by saying nothing and doing everything. He doesn't seem to notice how you feel. I know he's worried about his mother but he seems to spend more time at her house than his own. You have a tiring and stressful job, caring for sick people all day, and it is unfair that he is always at his mother's and leaves you to do all the housework. The empty whisky bottles under the bed are also worrying. Perhaps he will feel better about himself when he finds work. In the meantime, you must try to talk openly to each other about your feelings, otherwise anger and resentment will grow. Also, buy some earplugs—you need a good night's sleep!

Yours Susie

Writing

Exercise 1. Prepare to write a dictation.

Exercise 2. Make up your own life story.

Exercise 3. Write a brief biographical account of any famous historical figure. Look for information in different sources.

UNIT II. STUDENT'S LIFE

Section A. Student's Working Day

Active Words

to get up in time (early, late)
to wake up
to awake
to be an early riser
to be an owl (a lark)
to stay (to lie) in bed
to open a window
to organize (to plan) one's day (time)
to get dressed
to put on a dressing gown (slippers)
to do one's morning exercises (jerks) to music
to go for a run
to make one's bed
to turn (switch) on/off the light, electricity, water, gas, TV, radio, lamp, tap
to clean one's teeth with a tooth brush
to shave (off)
to wash one's face, hands
to dry one's face (hands) on/with a towel
to take (to have) a cold (hot) shower (bath)
to have breakfast (lunch, dinner, supper, tea, a meal, a snack)
to pack a bag
to comb (to brush, to do) one's hair before a mirror (a looking-glass)
to put on one's face (to make up)
to change one's clothes
to leave the house
to hurry to a bus stop
to catch (to take, to miss) a bus (tram, trolley, taxi)
to get by bus (tram, trolley, taxi, car)
to go on foot (to walk)
it takes me 15 minutes to get to
it's 15 minutes' (a 15-minute) walk from
to come (to arrive) on time (in time)
to be late (in time) for the lessons
to be a latecomer
on the way home
to be sick and tired of daily routine (smth, doing smth)
to have a nap
to enjoy smth (doing smth)

to feel like doing smth
 to go for a walk (a stroll)
 to go out
 to relax (to have a rest)
 to knit
 to play chess (cards, the piano)
 to watch TV
 to listen to music (the news) over/on the radio
 to keep late hours
 to take off slippers (a dressing gown)
 to put on pyjamas
 to be (to fall) asleep
 to go to bed

Vocabulary Exercises

Exercise 1. Fill in the chart giving as many expressions as possible with the verbs “to have”, “to get”, “to go” from your active vocabulary and translate them.

TO HAVE	TO GET	TO GO

Exercise 2. Match the verbs on the left with the correct word on the right.

fall have play go clean feed get up	a rest my teeth the dog asleep cards early to bed
---	---

Exercise 3. Find the correct ending on the right for each of these sentence beginnings on the left, then put the sentences in the most logical order.

1. I cleaned 2. I went 3. I set 4. I switched off 5. I had 6. I put on 7. I got	the light into bed a wash my teeth to sleep the alarm clock my pyjamas
---	--

Exercise 4. a) Read the following text, translate it paying special attention to the bolded phrases.

Sleep

During the week I usually **wake up** at 6.30 a.m. I sometimes **lie in bed** for five minutes but then I have to **get up**. Most evenings, I **go to bed** at about 11.30 p.m. I'm usually very tired, so I **go to sleep / fall asleep** very quickly. Occasionally though, I can't **get to sleep**. When that happens, I sometimes manage to **fall asleep** about 3 a.m., then I **oversleep** in the morning. If I **have a late night**, I try to **have a nap** in the afternoon. The weekends are different. On Saturday and Sunday I **have a lie-in**.

Food

In the week I **have breakfast** at 7.30 a.m., lunch at 1.00 p.m., and dinner around 7 p.m. I also **have** one or two **snacks** during the day at work. As I live **alone / on my own / by myself** I also make my own breakfast and dinner, but during the week I don't **bother** to cook very much. I also have to **feed** my two cats twice a day as well.

Keeping clean

In the summer I **have a shower** in the morning, but in the winter I often **have a bath** instead. Sometimes I **have a shave** at the same time, or I **shave** when I **have a wash and clean / brush my teeth** after breakfast. I **wash my hair** two or three times a week.

Work

In the morning I **leave home** about 8.15 a.m. and **get to work** by 9 a.m. I **have a lunch break** from 1-2 p.m., and a couple of **short breaks** during the day. I **leave work** around 5.30 p.m. and **get home** about 6.15 p.m.

Evenings

During the week I usually **stay in** and **have a rest**. But at the weekend I often **go out**, but quite often I also **have friends for dinner**, or friends just **come around for a chat** or we **play cards**.

b) Can you find some facts from the text above which are exactly the same, similar, completely different in your routine? Complete the table below.

THE SAME	SIMILAR	DIFFERENT
1.	1.	1.
2.	2.	2.

Exercise 5. Translate the following into Russian.

1. Did you go out last night?
2. I think I'm going to stay in this evening.
3. I overslept this morning.
4. I couldn't get to sleep last night.
5. Do you want to come round this evening?
6. I forgot to do the shopping.
7. What time did you get home?

8. I nearly fell asleep in the lesson today.

Exercise 6. Match the following phrases: *clean your teeth; get dressed; catch a bus; meet friends; have a shower; wake up; go for a run; go for a walk; cook a meal; go to the gym with the pictures (a-j) and make up sentences about your family using the words of frequency: always, often, usually, sometimes, occasionally, rarely, seldom, never, every morning (afternoon, day, evening, night), at/on week-ends.*



Exercise 7. Look at the pictures and discuss in pairs whether you do and how often you both do the following activities. Use these questions as the models:

- *Do you sometimes wash your clothes?*
- *How often do you read newspapers?*
- *What time do you get up?*
- *How do you go to work?*

Things we do every day



I wake up



get up



go to the bathroom



have a shower



have breakfast



listen to the radio



go to work



come home



make dinner



phone (or call) a friend



watch TV



go to bed

Sometimes I ...



wash clothes



clean the house



go for a walk



write letters

Exercise 8. Give the interrogative and negative forms of the following sentences.

1. I turned off the light at 9.00 yesterday.
2. The girls are doing the room at the moment.
3. It takes me long to prepare for my English lesson.
4. It took Peter five minutes to shave.
5. My sister is very good at sewing.
6. Peter is going to repair our TV-set.
7. We are going for a walk after classes.

Exercise 9. Form questions to the parts of the sentences in bold type.

1. I have dinner at two.
2. I leave for the Institute **at eight o'clock**.
3. **No**, I do not go to the Institute by tram; I go to the Institute by bus.
4. It takes me **three hours** to get ready for my homework.
5. Jane has a lot of practice in English; **that's why she speaks perfectly**.
6. I **do my room** with a vacuum-cleaner once a week.
7. **Mary** went to bed.
8. I **take a bath** every morning.
9. I go to the Institute **by Metro**.
10. I do my hair with a comb.
11. My classes last **6 hours**.
12. I have a sandwich with tea **for breakfast**.

Exercise 10. Fill in articles where necessary.

1. Mary regularly takes ... cold shower. 2. I always do ... room with ... vacuum-cleaner. 3. Let's turn on ... tape-recorder and dance to ... music. 4. What are your fellow students doing? — Peter and David are playing ... chess. 5. I don't go to ... Institute by... bus. 6. How long does it take you to do ... homework? 7. It is not pleasant to go by ... Metro on such a fine day. Let's go on ... foot. 8. Will you turn on ... radio?

Exercise 11. Fill in the gaps with the words given at the end:

A. Victor Kedrov is chief engineer at the automobile plant. He had a very busy day yesterday. When he ... the office his secretary ... him ... business letters. He read them and then he wrote replies to the letters. He ... his secretary to type them. From 10 to 12 he ... some telephone calls. At 12 o'clock he ... his wife for lunch. After lunch he ... in a conference. He ... some interesting reports at the conference. When he ... to the office at 4 o'clock he ... some visitors waiting for him. He discussed a ... of problems with them. At 5.30 his wife ... him She ... him to take their son from the kindergarten on the way home. Victor was very tired after work so when he ... home, he had supper and then he ... the TV set and watched an interesting programme.

(ask, hear, enter, return, several, number, find, ring up, meet, bring, make, take part, switch on)

B. My brother George works at a research institute. His working day ... at 9 a.m. He ... at 7.30. He has ... and ... home for work. ... he goes to work It ... him ... half an hour to get to the institute. George is ... for work. My brother is a research worker. He ... interesting problems in physics. George stays at work ... 6 o'clock. At 6 o'clock he ... the institute and When he ... his wife and kids ... for him. They all have ... together. After ... they ... in the park ... an hour or so.

It is 4 p.m. now. George is ... at work. At 4.40 he has ... with his boss. At the moment George is ... some papers to take them to the boss.

(prepare, study, supper, still, till, an appointment, start, never, late, walk, for, leave, come home, usually, breakfast, get up, as a rule, by bus, about, go home, wait)

Exercise 12. Fill in the gaps with prepositions where necessary:

Susan is a typist. She works ... an office. She works ... Monday... Friday, but she doesn't work ... Saturday and Sunday. ... five mornings every week she goes ... the office. She gets ... the office a few minutes ... nine o'clock. She is never late ... work.

Susan's working day begins ... 9. She types letters ... 12.30. ... 12.30 she has lunch. ... lunch she meets her friend and she has a chat ... him. ... lunch Susan goes back ... the office. She works ... 5 o'clock. Then she goes ...

home. She comes ... home ... the office ... a quarter... six every evening... five evenings a week she stays ... home, reads books or listens ... the radio, but ... the weekend she goes out ... the evening. She goes ... a cinema or ... a concert. ... Monday morning Mr Clark, the manager of the office, is going away ... business ... a week. Susan is going to work hard ... morning ... night to type a report... the time Mr Clark arrives.

Exercise 13. Use the verbs in brackets in the correct forms:

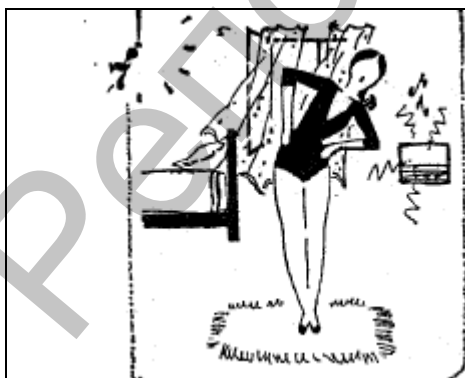
A. The Blacks (live) in a big house not far from London. Mr Black and his two sons Roger and David Black (work) in London. They (go) to London every day from Monday to Friday.

Yesterday Mr Black and his sons (get) up at 7 as usual. They (wash) and (shave). David (have) a bath. They (go) back to the bedroom and (dress). At half past seven they (go) downstairs for breakfast.

At breakfast Roger and David (sit) opposite each other. Mrs Black (sit) opposite her husband. After breakfast Mr Black (smoke) a cigarette and (read) the newspaper. At twenty-five past eight Mr Black and the boys (leave) the house. Mrs Black (go) to the gate and (say) good-bye to them. They (walk) to the station. They (come) to the station a few minutes before twenty to nine. Their train (get) to London at a quarter past nine.

B. It's 7.30 a. m. and the Wilsons are in the kitchen. Mrs Wilson (sit) at the breakfast table. She (read) the morning paper. She (read) the morning papers every morning. Mr Wilson (pour) a cup of coffee. He (drink) two cups of coffee every morning before he (go) to work. There is a cartoon on TV, but the children (watch, not) it. They (play) with their toys instead. They usually (watch) TV in the morning. Mr and Mrs Wilson (watch, not) TV either. They (like, not) to watch cartoons.

Exercise 14. Study the pictures and say what Mary regularly does.



1. встает; открывает окно; включает музыку; делает зарядку под музыку; умывается.



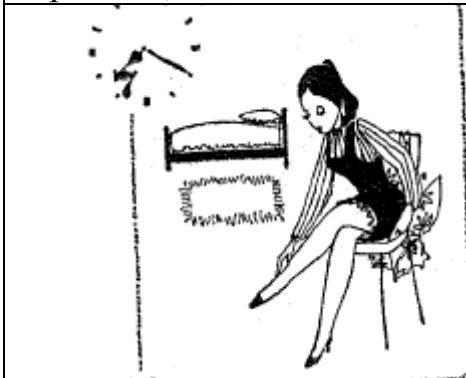
5. торопится; никогда не опаздывает; не ходит пешком; ездит на автобусе; у нее уходит.



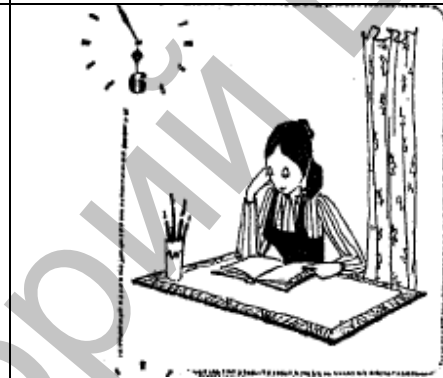
2. принимает холодный душ; вытирается полотенцем; чистит зубы; расчесывает волосы перед зеркалом; одевается.



6. обедает; идет в библиотеку; готовит уроки.



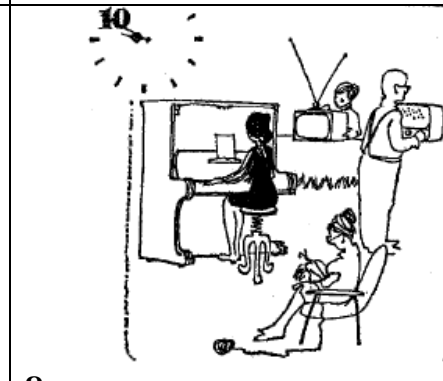
3. застилает кровать; чистит щеткой одежду и обувь; надевает.



7. отдыхает; делает домашнее задание.



4. завтракает; подметает пол щеткой; моет посуду.



8. играет на пианино; ремонтирует; вяжет; слушает новости по радио.

Exercise 15. Translate into English using your active words:

A. Вчера я проснулся в 7 часов утра. Я умылся, позавтракал и поехал на завод. Как правило, я хожу на завод пешком. Я живу недалеко от работы, но вчера я ехал на автобусе, так как вышел из дома поздно и боялся опоздать. Я пришел на завод без десяти восемь и работал до 5 часов. В 5 часов я закончил работу. После работы у нас было собрание. Я выступил с докладом. На собрании было много

рабочих и инженеров с нашего завода. Им понравился мой доклад. Во время собрания мы обсудили много вопросов. Я вернулся домой поздно, поужинал и пошел на прогулку. Перед сном я просмотрел газеты и послушал новости.

В. Как вы знаете, меня зовут Иван Павлов. Мне уже около сорока лет. Я люблю свою работу и вообще доволен жизнью. В течение недели я обычно много работаю. Все мои рабочие дни одинаковы. Я встаю в 6.30. В 7 часов я уже готов к завтраку. Я уйду из дома в 7.30. Мой рабочий день начинается в 8.15. На работу я хожу пешком. На это у меня уходит 35 минут. Я никогда не опаздываю, потому что не езжу автобусом. Я не люблю ждать автобус, который обычно опаздывает. Пока я иду на работу, я планирую свой рабочий день. Я думаю о том, что мне нужно сделать и чего мне нельзя забыть.

Например, сегодня. В девять утра у меня встреча с клиентами. Такая встреча обычно занимает 2 или 3 часа. Потом я иду к шефу, чтобы рассказать ему о встрече. Фактически, я всегда готовлю ему доклад. Он любит проводить различные совещания и конференции. В час у меня всегда обед. Обычно я обедаю в столовой фирмы. И, наконец, после обеда я могу делать свои дела. Я готовлю документы, звоню в другие фирмы, обсуждаю деловые вопросы с коллегами. Что еще я делаю? Пишу письма, иногда есть время почитать.

Я работаю до 5.30. Я прихожу домой к 6.30. Пока жена готовит ужин, читаю газеты или помогаю ей. Но это я делаю редко. В 11 я уже сплю. Завтра начинается рабочий день, такой же, как сегодня.

Reading

Reading 1. My Working Day

Exercise 1. Read the text.

My parents usually returned home at six o'clock. When I was at home we had supper together. We used the possibility to exchange the news and make plans for tomorrow.

As breakfast was usually served in the kitchen, the family was already there. It was my mother who made and served it to all of us, but we all helped her. For breakfast we usually had tea or coffee with some sandwiches and jam. It was always light and quick.

At home I had my lunch and took a short rest. Then I went for a walk with my friends. Sometimes we played football. In winter we played hockey or went to ski.

I used to go to bed at about 11. Before going to bed I took a shower, brushed my teeth and then did some reading. Usually I fell asleep at once as I felt exhausted by the end of the day.

I usually had six or seven lessons a day, so at dinner time I went to the canteen and had my dinner there. When the lessons were over, I didn't hurry home at once. As I am fond of sports (basketball is my favourite) I never missed the chance to play a game or two after classes.

I was back at home by five. It was time to do my homework. It took me more than three hours to do it. Very often I had to write compositions. That kind of work was usually preceded by my visit to the library. I also spent some hours in the reading-hall when I had to make a report. Three times a week I attended preparatory courses at the University. My week-days were extremely busy. In spring, when I had to prepare for my finals, I spent less time with my friends in the open air. My walks were limited to my way to school and back and books replaced almost all the entertainments.

When I was a schoolboy, I used to get up at 6.30 in the morning. The alarm clock was of no use, because it could never wake me up. It was always my mother who awoke me every morning. It usually took me not more than 20 minutes to get up, to air the room and do my morning jerks. Then I had a wash in the bathroom, cleaned my teeth, dressed and made my bed. Soon I was ready to join my family for breakfast.

At 7.30 I left for school. Lessons began at 8 sharp, but I liked to come to school 10 or 15 minutes earlier to meet with my friends and chat a little. I do not remember ever being late for my first lesson.

Exercise 2. Write questions for the underlined sentences.

Reading 2. John Naylor's Day

Exercise 1. Read and translate the following text.

John Naylor is a successful businessman. Let's follow him through a **typical day.**

The alarm clock **goes off** at 7.00 a.m. John **jolts out of bed** at the same time. The automatic coffee maker kicks on in the kitchen. He **jumps** in the shower, shaves, opens one of the half-dozen boxes of freshly laundered white shirts, finishes dressing, and **pours** a cup of coffee. He sits down to a piece of whole wheat toast while he **looks through** the Fleet Street Journal. It takes him about 15 minutes to wake up and get ready. His briefcase in one hand and gym bag in the other, he **hops** in the car, ready to start the day.

He **enters** the office at exactly 7.45 a.m. He **takes a seat** in front of his computer and prepares for hours of phone calls and meetings that occupy his mornings.

At noon John **rushes** to the health club where he **strips off** the grey suit and changes into his T-shirt shorts and the latest in design running shoes for tennis. In an hour he is sitting in the club dining-room where he has scheduled

lunch with a potential client. They discuss business over sparkling water, pasta and a cup of coffee.

At 2.30 p.m. he is back at his office, **eager for** several more hours of frantic meetings and phone calls. At 6.00 p.m. John phones out **to deliver** dinner that will keep him through the next three hours he is going to spend at his office.

John gets home at 10.00 p.m. just in time **to sit down to** a bowl of frozen yoghurt and the season's most popular drama series.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase or give synonyms to the bolded words.

Exercise 3. Answer the following questions:

1. What takes up most of John Naylor's time?
2. What things do you dislike about his daily routine?
3. Is his daily routine always the same?
4. Is his daily routine very different from yours? How?
5. What do you think about his social life? What daily routine may his girlfriend have?
6. Is he happy? Why?
7. What problems may arise if John gets married and starts a family?

Exercise 4. Put brief notes of John's daily routine in the box. Use these times as a guide and speak about his typical week day.

7:00	
7:15	
7:45	
10:00	
12:00	
2:30	
6:00-9:00	
1:00	

Speaking

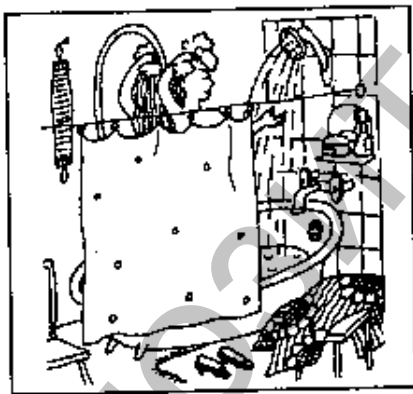
Exercise 1. Answer the following questions.

1. (At) what time do you get up?
2. Is it light when you get up?
3. You do your morning exercises to music, don't you?
4. What do you do in the bathroom?
5. What do you do with a tooth-brush (a towel, a comb)?
6. Do you take a shower in the morning or before you go to bed?
7. What do you clean your teeth with?
8. What do you dry yourself on?
9. You do your hair before a looking-glass, don't you?
10. At what time do you usually have breakfast?
11. What do you do with the dishes after having a meal?
12. What do you usually do before you leave the university?
13. What do you

clean your flat with? 14. (At) what time do you leave for the university? 15. It takes you long to get to the university, doesn't it? 16. How long does it take you to get to the university? 17. Do you go to the university by bus? 18. (At) what time do your classes begin? 19. What do you do when the classes are over? 20. Where do you usually have dinner? 21. Do you prepare for your English lessons at home or do you prefer to work in the university reading-room? 22. How long does it take you to do your homework? 23. Do you work at the laboratory every day? 24. When do you usually come home? 25. What do you usually do when you come home? 26. In what way do you help your mother about the house? 27. What do you do with an iron (a vacuum-cleaner, a broom)? 28. What do you usually do in the evening? 29. Do you often go to the theatre or to the cinema? 30. You are fond of skating, aren't you? 31. What do you do when you stay at home in the evening? 32. Do your friends often come to see you? 33. How do you spend the time when your friends come to see you? 34. You listen to the news every day, don't you? 35. What do you do when you are going to listen to the latest news? 36. (At) what time do you usually go to bed?

Exercise 2. Study the pictures and say what Samantha did yesterday.

Model: Yesterday at 7 o'clock Samantha got up, did her mornings jerks and ...



seven o'clock



eight o'clock



nine o'clock



twelve o'clock



five o'clock



six o'clock



seven o'clock



ten o'clock

Exercise 3. Match the two halves of each proverb correctly. Translate them into Russian or give their Russian equivalents. Make up a story to illustrate one of these proverbs.

An early bird catches
 Time is
 Never put off till tomorrow
 Time and tide
 Better late
 Every day is not
 No man can do
 All work and no play makes
 Punctuality is

Jack a dull boy.
 two things at once.
 a virtue.
 a worm.
 money.
 what you can do today.
 wait for no man.
 Sunday.
 than never.

Exercise 4. Carry out a survey "How to Organise Your Day". Ask your group mates:

1. how much time they spend: working, sleeping, washing and getting dressed, eating and drinking, shopping, travelling, doing housework, studying, reading, watching TV, performing other leisure activities, doing nothing;
2. which activities they enjoy doing and how long they spend on them;

3. which activities they do not enjoy doing and how long they spend on them;
4. if there is something they don't have time to do or would like to spend more time doing;
5. if there is some way they could organise their time differently and how.

Exercise 5. Talk about your busiest day.

Listening

Listening 1. Anna's Day. Mike's Day.

(New Headway English Course Beginner (Workbook), units 6, 10)

Exercise. Listen to Anna's and Mike's daily actions and say what they do (did) at the following times.

Anna's Day	Mike's Day
10 p.m.	7.00 a.m.
6.15 a.m.	8.30 a.m.
7.30 a.m.	12.30 a.m.
3.00 p.m.	after work
3.30 p.m.	after lunch
8.30 p.m.	in the evening at home
10.00 p.m.	10 p.m.

Listening 2. Karl's Day. Katya's Day.

(New Headway English Course Beginner (Student's book, unit 6))

Exercise 1. Karl Wilk is 22 and he is a computer millionaire. He's the director of a 24-hour shopping site on the Internet. Look through the text and answer the questions on the tape about Karl's daily actions.

He gets up at six o'clock and he has a shower. He has breakfast at six forty five. He leaves home at seven fifteen and he goes to work by taxi. He has lunch (a Coca-Cola and a sandwich) in his office at one o'clock. He usually works late. He leaves work at eight in the evening. He sometimes buys a pizza and eats it at home. He gets home at nine fifteen. He never goes out in the evening. He works at his computer from nine thirty to eleven thirty. He goes to bed at eleven forty five.

Exercise 2. Karl has a sister, Katya. Her day is different. Listen to the tape and complete the text with the verbs.

Katya is 25. She's an artist. She _____ in a small house in the country. She usually _____ at ten o'clock in the morning. She never _____ early. She _____ coffee and toast for breakfast and then she _____ with her dog.

She _____ at eleven o'clock and she _____ in her studio until seven o'clock in the evening. Then she _____ dinner and _____ a glass of wine. After dinner, she sometimes _____ and she sometimes _____ the piano. She usually _____ very late, at one or two o'clock in the morning.

Exercise 3. Is this sentence about Karl or Katya? Write he or she.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. ---'s a millionaire. | 6. ---works at home in a studio. |
| 2. ---'s an artist. | 7. ---doesn't work in an office. |
| 3. ---lives in the country. | 8. ---doesn't cook. |
| 4. ---doesn't have a dog. | 9. ---likes wine. |
| 5. ---gets up very early. | 10. ---loves computers. |

Exercise 4. Correct the sentences about Katya and Karl.

1. She lives in the town.
2. He gets up at ten o'clock.
3. She has a big breakfast.
4. He has a dog.
5. She works in an office.
6. He cooks dinner in the evening.
7. She goes to bed early.
8. They go out in the evening.

Writing

Exercise 1. Prepare to write a dictation.

Exercise 2. Write a short description of a) your busiest day; b) your day off; c) your favourite day in the form of diary notes. Follow the pattern:

Thursday, 31st. December.

I have the last day of the year, but it is always the busiest one.

Exercise 3. Write a composition or an essay on the topic "How I Organise My Time". Use some ideas from the text that follows.

I'm in the second year at the university, where I'm studying English and German. I try to organise my time wisely, I never oversleep though I find it hard to get up on time. Usually I get enough sleep.

I am not an early riser, but I am awake by 7 o'clock, and full of energy. I have a quick shower, make my bed, put on make-up, do my hair, eat a full breakfast and set off to the university. Then I am in a hurry to the bus stop where I catch a bus. It takes me about twenty minutes to get to the university.

My studies keep me busy all day long. I have English four times a week. I also have lectures and seminars. At lunchtime I meet with my boy-friend and we have a snack at the university cafe. After classes I occasionally go to the library where I prepare for my seminars.

I often come home tired so I have a short rest; help my mother to do the housework and then sit down to homework. Sometimes I keep late hours studying English or German and go to bed only at midnight.

Section B. Our Studies

What Do You Know About the English Language

1. How many people in the world speak English?
2. How many people in the world speak English as their first language?
3. How many people in the world speak English as their second language?
4. Where do people speak English as their first language?
5. How many words do most people who speak English as their first language understand?
6. How many words do most people who speak English as their first language use?
7. How many words does an average English dictionary have?
8. Is English spelling the same all over the world?
9. What are the 5 most commonly used words in English?
10. How many words did Shakespeare use?

Now read the text and check your answers

English is a very popular and important language. Wherever you go, you can hear it. More than 750,000,000 people around the world speak English but only about 350,000,000 of these people speak it as their first language. People in Great Britain, the United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa speak English as their first language. Although they all speak English, there are differences. There are different accents. There are different spellings. There are even different uses of words. For example, the word *vest* means a waistcoat in America; in Britain it means something you wear under your clothes.

There are more words in English than in many other languages. The average dictionary has about 300,000 words. The average French dictionary has about 60,000 words. Most people who speak English as their first language understand between 50,000 and 250,000, but use only about 10,000.

English is a very important language. We need it when we go abroad because not many people in Europe or America speak our native languages.

Also, we enjoy watching British and American films, and not all these films have translations. Another favourite with us is the music channel on television, MTV. Many of the songs on MTV are in English.

English is an international language. It is the most important language in the world today. People all over the world do business in English. It helps tourists, diplomats, scientists, engineers and many other groups of people.

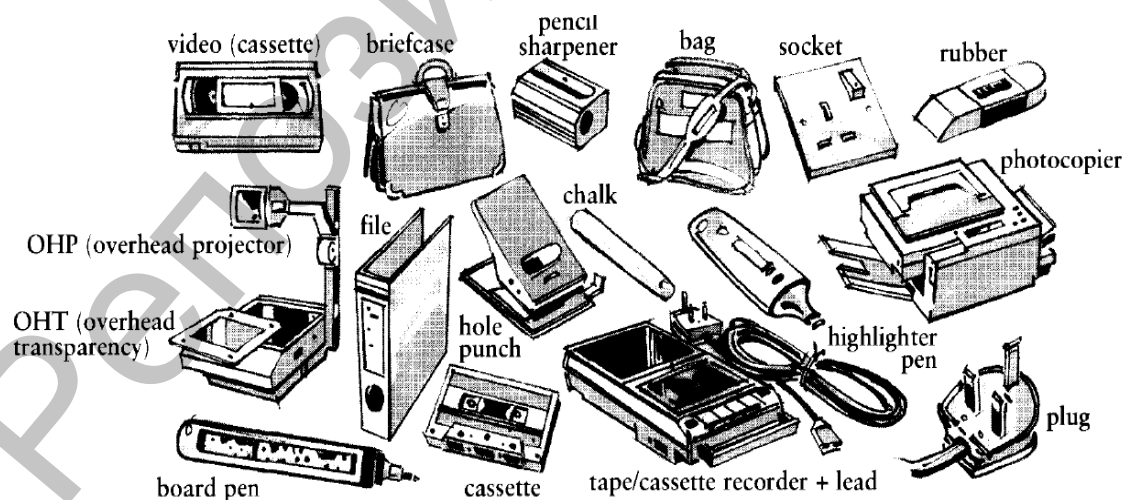
Active Words

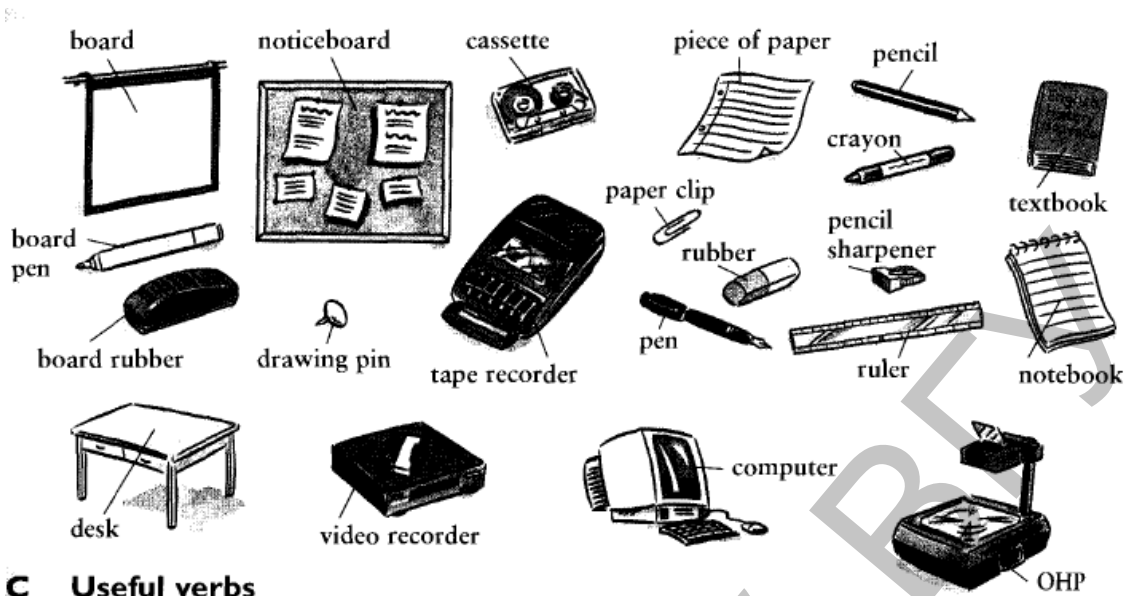
to be absent from / to be present at
to go to / to attend school / classes / lectures
to have a break
to be interested in
to consult a dictionary / to look up new words in a dictionary
to give / to get a mark for the answer
to make / to correct a mistake
to punish for smth.
to repeat after smb.
to keep silent
to speak up; ~ with (to) smb.; about smth.
to pronounce correctly
to do corrections / exercises / translation / revision
to work hard at
to make progress in
to do vocabulary, grammar, spelling tests
to write a dictation
to work in pairs / groups (of three)
to make up (compose) dialogues
to have pronunciation practice
to do / to give / to mark / to get oral / written homework in
to learn the new vocabulary, rules (by heart)
to reproduce in class
to interrupt smb
to revise
to manage (cope with) the task / assignment
to switch on / off the tape-recorder
to listen to smth. over the tape
to ask / answer the questions
to read (aloud / to oneself) / to retell / to translate the text
to understand
to master the language / to have a good command of the language
to have / to hold classes / lectures / seminars / tutorials on / in
to be a quick learner
to hand in / out smth.

to borrow books from the library
 to succeed in (doing) smth
 to concentrate on smth.
 to swot / to cram
 to be good / bad / clever at smth.
 to have a good ear (memory) for foreign words
 to enrich vocabulary
 to memorize long vocabulary lists
 to take / to make / to copy up notes
 to read up / to revise for exams / for a seminar on (in) linguistics
 to crib
 to play truant / to skip classes
 to lag (be) behind smb. in / with smth.
 to lack fluency / vocabulary
 to do everything at the last minute
 to catch up with smb. in smth.
 to complain of
 to take / to retake / to do / to sit / to fail / to pass final / entrance exams
 to do badly / well in one's exam
 to have bad / good luck

Vocabulary exercises

Exercise 1. These are some of the things you may use in your classroom. Write them down with the transcription and learn.





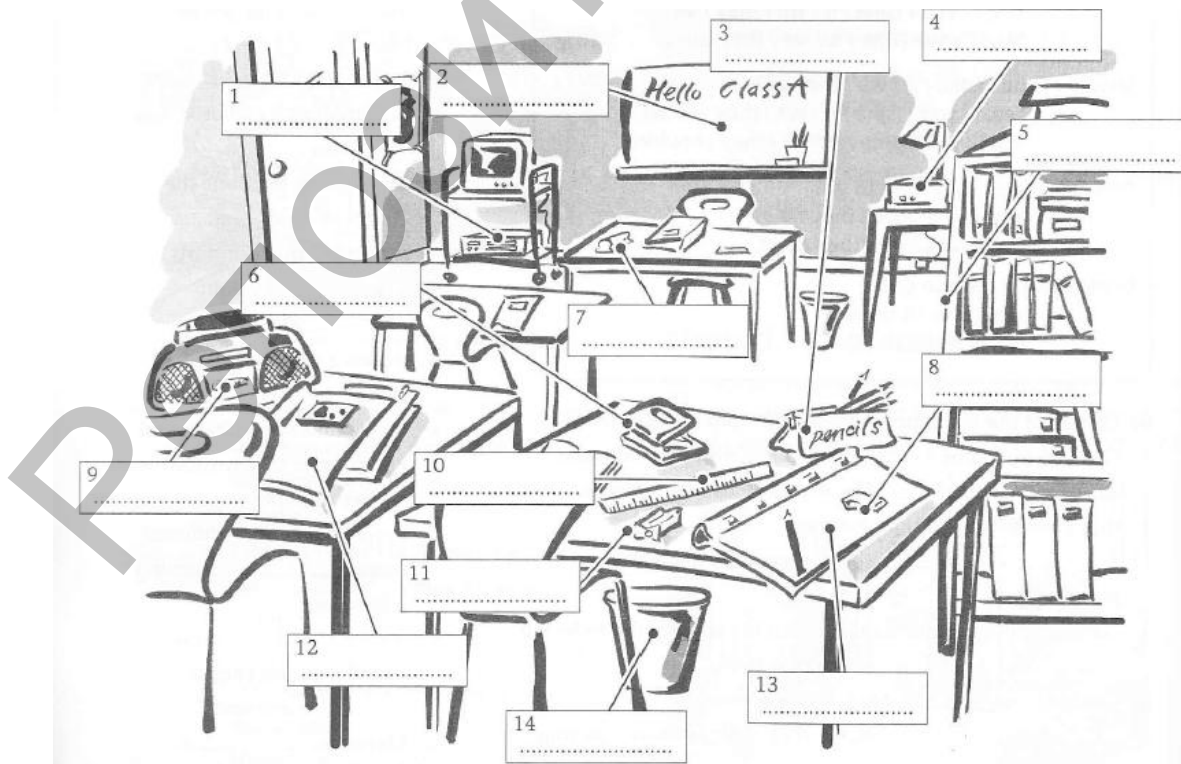
C Useful verbs

Exercise 2. Look at the picture below.

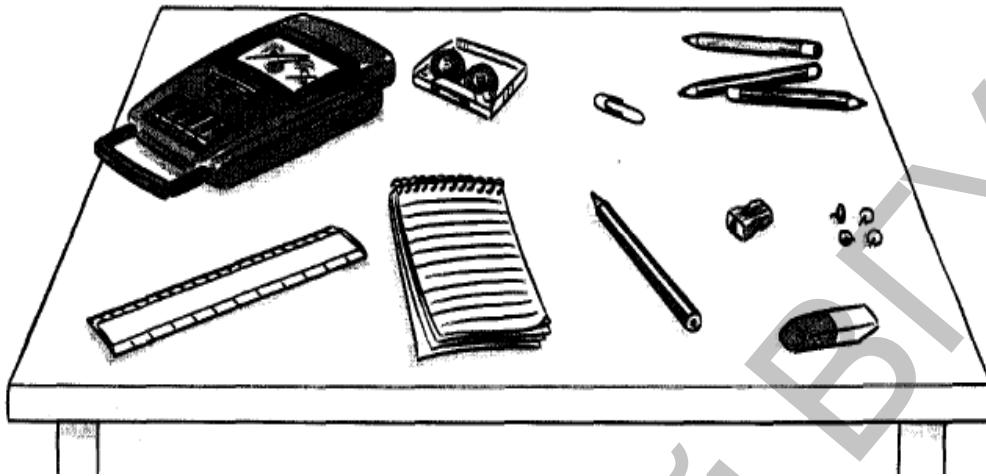
a) Label the numbered items with the correct word: *notebook, file, hole punch, rubber, video recorder, board rubber, waste bin, cassette player, overhead projector, pencil case, bookcase, ruler, whiteboard, pencil sharpener.*

b) Put the items into one of the boxes below.

Uses electricity	Doesn't use electricity	Usually metal	Not metal
cassette player

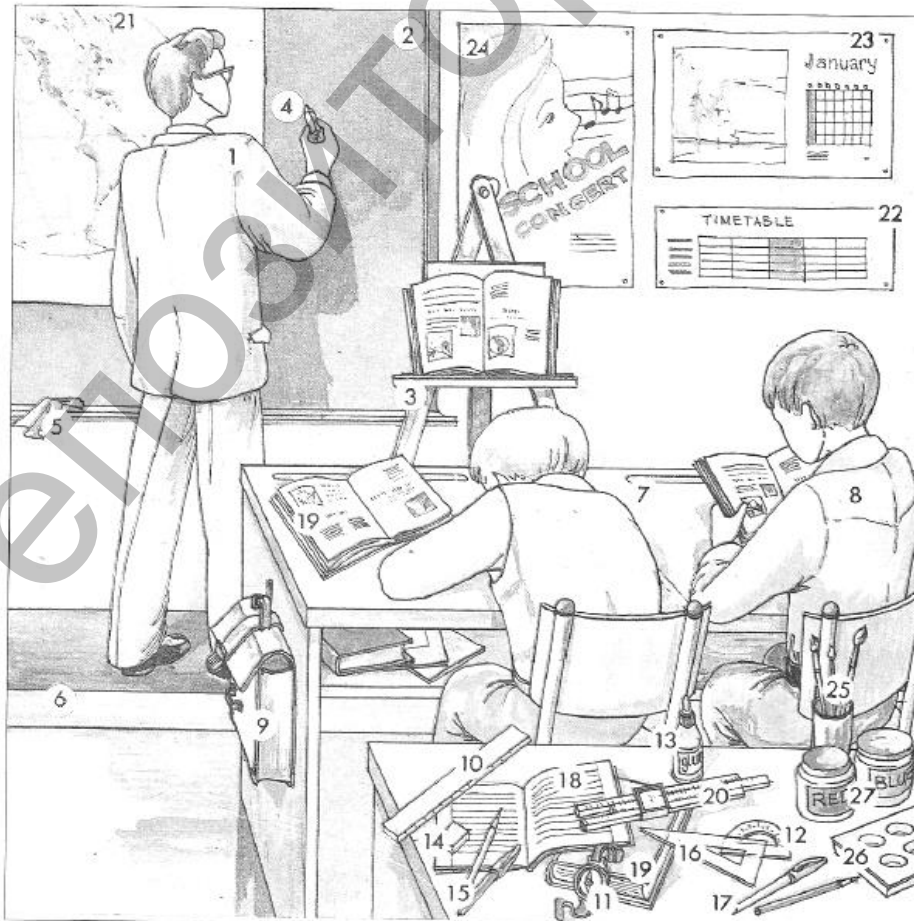


Exercise 3. Look at the picture for 30 seconds. Then cover it. How many of the ten objects can you remember? Write them down in English.



Exercise 4. Match the following objects (1-27) with their names. What things have you got in the room where you study?

Prompts: paints, pen, desk, palette, set-square, platform, paintbrushes, pencil, duster, poster, rubber, chalk, calendar, glue/gum, easel, timetable, protractor, blackboard, map, compass, teacher, ruler, slide-rule, textbook, schoolbag/satchel, exercise-book, schoolgirl/schoolboy/pupil.



Exercise 5. What order do you normally do the things when you want to learn new words?

- You practise saying it.
- You look it up in a dictionary.
- You write it down in your notebook.
- You try to guess what it means.
- You think of a way to remember it.
- You try hard to use it in a conversation.
- You check the pronunciation.

Exercise 6. Now answer the following questions.

1. What do you rub off the board?
2. What do you put in a tape recorder?
3. What do you put on an OHP?
4. What do you keep in a file?
5. What do you put in a briefcase?
6. What do you put in a socket?
7. What do you use a dictionary for?
8. What do you use a rubber for?
9. What do you use a photocopier for?
10. Why do you turn up a tape recorder?

Exercise 7. Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right:

- | | |
|-----------|---------------------|
| 1 clean | a places |
| 2 turn up | b a word |
| 3 borrow | c mistakes |
| 4 swap | d the board |
| 5 video | e a dictionary |
| 6 do | f the OHP |
| 7 correct | g the tape recorder |
| 8 look up | h a programme |
| 9 plug in | i an exercise |

Exercise 8. Think about your last lesson. Did you do any of these things? What else did you do?

clean the board; use a rubber; borrow something; watch a video; swap places with someone; look up a word; make a mistake; write something down in a notebook, etc

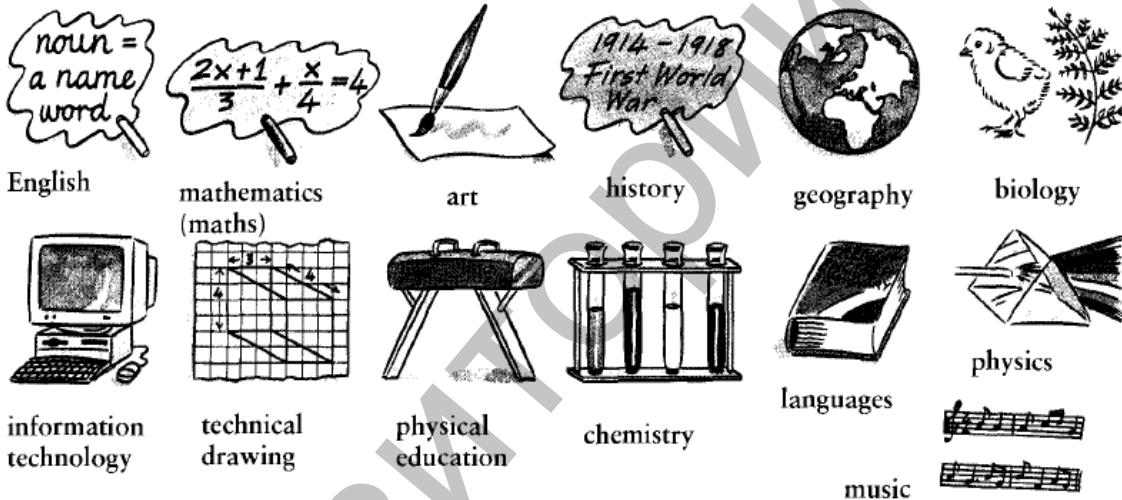
Exercise 9. Translate the following sentences into Russian.

1. Look up a word if you don't understand.
2. Borrow your friend's dictionary and rubber.
3. Rub out mistakes in your notebook.
4. Rub the things off the board.

5. Write these words in your exercise-books and learn them by heart.
6. Children, repeat these sounds after me.
7. How do you spell "bicycle"?
8. What does "tuition" mean?
9. Carlos, clean the blackboard, please.
10. Enrique, will you swap places with Lorena?
11. How do you pronounce "doubt"?
12. What's the difference between these two sentences?
13. How do we use this word in a phrase?
14. Teachers correct students' mistakes.
15. Plug in the tape-recorder, please.

Exercise 10. Look at the subjects. Which were your favourite subjects? Which didn't you like?

Subjects



Exercise 11. Match the subject on the left with the topic on the right.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 maths | a animals |
| 2 physics | b gymnastics |
| 3 history | c $25y + 32x = 51z$ |
| 4 geography | d $e = mc$ |
| 5 physical education | e H_2O |
| 6 English | f the countries of the world |
| 7 chemistry | g the 15 th century |
| 8 biology | h computers |
| 9 information technology | i spelling |

Exercise 12. Here are some names of subjects but the letters are mixed up. What are the subjects?

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1 mgrean | 6 ehgoragpy |
| 2 irthosy | 7 rat |
| 3 cneceei | 8 simcu |

4 nisgehl
5 hogtceynlo

9 ehncfr
10 neocciosm

Exercise 13. Look at a school timetable. As you can see, the pupils have five lessons every day, and altogether they do/study eleven subjects a week plus Physical Education (PE). Every morning they have a twenty-minute break. There are three terms in a school year and the timetable changes every year. Now speak about your timetable at the university. Consult Russian-English dictionary if necessary.

	MON	TUES	WED	THURS	FRI
Lesson 1	Religious Education	Maths	Social Education	English	Visual Art
(break)					
Lesson 2	History	Science	Music	Science	Geography
Lesson 3	English		French	Physical Education (PE)	Maths
(lunch)					
Lesson 4	Maths*	History	Information Technology	Maths	Physical Education
Lesson 5	Geography	Visual Art		French	English

Exercise 14. Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- Penny took three exams and managed to pass/succeed them all.
- Tim had to learn/teach fifty children how to swim.
- I can't come to the cinema tonight. I'm reading/studying for a test.
- Rita did very well, and was given maximum grades/marks.
- It's hard reading aloud/loudly when you don't understand the words.
- I have to read/study hard because I have a test tomorrow.
- If you don't understand a word, look it out/look it up in a dictionary.
- Please do the rest of this exercise for homework/housework.
- Mrs Jackson learns/teaches us geography.
- At the end of the lesson, put the books back on the bookshelf/library.
- Paul tried hard/hardly this year, and made progress.
- Why were you absent/off yesterday, Angela?
- Jim lost/failed the maths test.
- Jack decided to take a course/lesson in hotel management.
- Sheila always got good marks/points in algebra.
- After leaving school, Ann studied/trained as a teacher.
- Peter decided not to go in/enter for the examination.
- My sister learned/taught me how to draw.

- s) I can't come to the cinema. I have to read/study for a test.
- t) In history we had to learn a lot of dates by hand/heart.
- u) I hope your work will improve by the end of course/term.
- v) Martin failed/missed his maths exam and had to sit it again.
- w) If you have any questions, raise/rise your hand.

Exercise 15. Complete each sentence with a word from the box. One word is unnecessary.

heart	take	lesson	pay
practice	make	timetable	revise
rules	have	class	concentrate
mean	time	break	divide
explain	underline	term	pass
fail	try	subject	punish
practice	uniform	attendance	underline
copy(2)	project	cheat	
share	notes	memorise	

1. Before her history exam, Laura learnt a list of dates by.....
2. I haven't spoken Spanish for ages and I'm a bit out of
3. Bringing your mobile phone to the class is against the !
4. Our maths teacher is always late. He's never on.....
5. We have to books because there aren't enough for one each.
6. Don't worry if you.....the exam. You can take it again in December.
7. I must remember tothis book back to the library today.
8. During the exam, Jack tried toSarah's work.
9. Some teachers don't.....things very clearly.
10. What exactly does this word.....?
11. We didn't.....a history lesson today, because our teacher was ill.
12. It's a good idea to.....important words with a pencil.
13. If you don't.....a foreign language, you soon forget it.
14. I can't.....up my mind about the answer to this question.
15. We had an interesting.....today about Ancient Egypt.
16. At the end of the.....our teachers write reports about us.
17. Please make.....as you read chapter two.
18. This is a very small..... . There are only eight students.
19. Kate's.....been good. She has only missed one lesson.
20. Our...has changed, and now we have English on Monday at 11.
21. The boys usually play football outside when they have a.....
22. Chris has to wear a.....at his new school.
23. Physics was Rebecca's favourite.....when she was at school.
24. I went to the library to find some information for my history.....
25. Our teachers used to... us by making us stay behind after school.

26. If you... twenty-seven by nine, the answer is three.
27. Try to... the most important rules.
28. It is difficult to... attention in a noisy classroom.
29. Pauline tried her best to... the end of year examinations.
30. Your work is the same as Harry's. Did you... his work?
31. Your mind is wandering! You must... more!
32. Helen decided to... all her work at the end of every week.
33. It's a good idea to... important parts of the book in red.
34. The teacher saw Jerry trying to... in the exam.

Exercise 16. Match the words (10) with a suitable definition (a-j). Use each word once only.

classmate	examiner	learner	principal	pupil
coach	graduate	lecturer	professor	tutor

- a) Someone who teaches at a university.....
- b) Someone who has a college degree
- c) The head of a school
- d) Someone who studies at primary or secondary school.....
- e) The most important teacher in a university department
- f) Someone who teaches one student or a very small class.....
- g) Someone in the same class as yourself.....
- h) Someone who trains a sports team.....
- i) Someone who writes the question papers of an examination
- j) Someone who drives but has not yet passed a driving test

Exercise 17. Complete each sentence (a-j) with a suitable ending (1-10). Use each ending once.

- a) Joe was absent most of the time.....
- b) Sue wanted to do the experiment for herself
- c) James was a very gifted pupil
- d) Lucy couldn't find a duster to clean the board
- e) Dave could pick up languages very easily....
- f) Brenda wanted to leave space for corrections ...
- g) Tony didn't pay attention in class.....
- h) Helen was educated at home by her parents
- i) Brian attended evening classes in photography ...
- j) Cathy wanted to get into university.....

- 1 so he didn't have any problems passing his exams.
- 2 so he started talking in French after only a few days.
- 3 so she had to study for the entrance examinations.
- 4 so his name was removed from the register.

- 5 so he didn't go out with his friends much during the week.
- 6 so she wrote her answers in the corner.
- 7 so she didn't have many friends of her own age.
- 8 so she wrote everything on alternate lines.
- 9 so she went to the science laboratory.
- 10 so he could never remember what the teacher had said.

Exercise 18. Choose the most suitable word or phrase to complete each sentence.

- a) Could you tell me what
A) does this word mean B) means this word C) this word means
- b) What's the difference... 'say' and 'tell'?
A) between B) of C) from
- c) If you don't know the answer... a guess.
A) do B) make C) say
- d) Please, pay...to what I am saying.
A) meaning B) knowledge C) attention
- e) If you're not sure... a question.
A) make B) ask C) do
- f) I don't understand. Can you give me a/an ...?
A) example B) sample C) model
- g) Please... yourself, John.
A) behaving B) behaviour C) behave
- h) I'm sorry, but I don't ...the question.
A) know B) understand C) realise
- i) Please, stop talking and...to your teacher.
A) hear B) attend C) listen
- j) Could you....that, please?
A) resay B) repeat C) retell
- k) Helen's parents were very pleased when they read her school... .
A) report B) papers C) diploma D) account
- l) Martin has quite a good... of physics.
A) result B) pass C) understanding D) head
- m) In Britain, children start... school at the age of five.
A) kindergarten B) secondary C) nursery D) primary
- n) Edward has a... in French from Leeds University.
A) certificate B) degree C) mark D) paper
- o) My favourite... at school was history.
A) topic B) class C) theme D) subject
- p) It's time for a break. The bell has... .
A) gone off B) struck C) rung D) sounded
- q) Our English teacher... us some difficult exercises for homework.
A) set B) put C) obliged D) made

r) Before you begin the exam paper, always read the... carefully.

A) orders B) instructions C) rules D) answers

s) If you want to pass the examination, you must study... .

A) hard B) enough C) thoroughly D) rather

t) Most students have quite a good sense of their own... .

A) grasp B) ability C) idea D) information

Exercise 19. Use the word given in the brackets to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

School report

Margaret started English Literature this term, and I am afraid that her (1 introduce) to the subject has not been entirely (2 success). She has not shown much enthusiasm, and does not always pay (3 attend) in class. Her assignments are often (4 read), because she is so untidy, and because of her (5 fail) to check her work thoroughly. She failed to do any (6 revise) before the end of term test, and had poor results. She seems to have the (7 mistake) idea that she can succeed without studying. She has also had many (8 absent) and has frequently arrived late for class. This has resulted in several (9 punish). Although Margaret is a (10 gift) student in some respects, she has not had a satisfactory term.

Exercise 20. Complete each sentence with a form of *do*, *make* or *take*.

a) Have you..... exercise 3 yet?

b) I can't come this afternoon. I'm..... an English exam.

c) Jack has very well this term.

d) I'm afraid that you haven't.....any progress.

e) Sue didn't know the answer, so she..... a guess.

f) You all look tired. Let's..... a break.

g) This is a good composition, but you havea lot of errors.

h) I think you shouldyourself more seriously.

i) The teacher gave a lecture, and the class notes.

j) Paul finds maths difficult, but hehis best.

Exercise 21. Complete each sentence with a word beginning as shown.

a) Charles has a good g... in the subject.

b) These children are badly behaved! They need more d... .

c) Everyone agrees that a good e... is important.

d) If you don't know a word, look it up in your d... .

e) Maths is easy if you are allowed to use a c... .

f) Keith spent four years studying at u... .

g) Some apes seem to have as much i... as humans!

h) I find listening c... tests rather difficult.

i) At the age of eleven I went to s... school.

j) I enjoyed doing e... in the laboratory.

Exercise 22. Complete each sentence with a suitable preposition.

- a) If you have a problem, put ... your hand.
- b) Please pay attention... what your teacher says.
- c) Mary has a degree... civil engineering.
- d) David was punished... throwing chalk at the teacher.
- e) I was very good... maths when I was at school.
- f) What's the answer if you multiply 18... 16?
- g) We had to write a composition... 'Our Ideal School'.
- h) Please write this... your exercise books.
- i) You might not understand things even if you learn them... heart.
- j) When Sue visited Italy, she soon picked... the language.

Exercise 23. Decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each space.

The wrong age for school!

Are the years you (1)... at school the best years of your life? Personally, I found most (2)... rather uninteresting. We had to sit at our (3)... in silence and (4)... attention. The teachers used to (5)... on the blackboard and (6)... us difficult questions. We also had to (7)... lots of homework and (8)... it in on time. We had to wear a school (9)..., and we had to obey lots of (10)... I (11)... school as soon as I could and started (12)... I read books at the public (13)..., and later I decided to (14)...college. I really enjoyed studying because I was older and knew that I wanted some (15)... When I was at school, I was just the wrong age!

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|------------|--------------|
| 1) A go | B have | C pass | D spend |
| 2) A lectures | B lessons | C them | D class |
| 3) A chairs | B desks | C posts | D parts |
| 4) A pay | B make | C have | D follow |
| 5) A read | B sit | C write | D talk |
| 6) A make | B do | C get | D ask |
| 7) A answer | B do | C take | D finish |
| 8) A write | B hand | C pass | D complete |
| 9) A uniform | B robe | C dress | D cloth |
| 10) A ways | B rules | C laws | D time |
| 11) A passed | B qualified | C examined | D left |
| 12) A job | B labour | C employee | D work |
| 13) A bookshop | B shelves | C library | D university |
| 14) A go | B attend | C study | D follow |
| 15) A qualifications | B examinations | C papers | D grades |

Learning how to learn

There is usually one important (1)...missing from most school (2)... . Very few students are (3)... how to organize their learning, and how to (4)... the best use of their time. Let's take some simple (5)... . Do you know how to (6)... up words in a dictionary, and do you understand all the

(7)... the dictionary contains? Can you (8)... notes quickly, and can you understand them (9)...? For some reason, many schools give learners no (10)... with these matters. Teachers ask students to (11)... pages from books, or tell them to write ten pages, but don't explain (12)... to do it. Learning by (13)... can be useful, but it is important to have a genuine (14)...of a subject. You can (15)... a lot of time memorizing books, without understanding anything about the subject!

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1) A theme | B book | C subject | D mark |
| 2) A agendas | B timetables | C terms | D organizations |
| 3) A taught | B learnt | C educated | D graduated |
| 4) A take | B give | C get | D make |
| 5) A sentences | B results | C rules | D examples |
| 6) A find | B look | C research | D get |
| 7) A information | B advise | C subjects | D themes |
| 8) A do | B send | C make | D revise |
| 9) A after | B afterwards | C lastly | D at last |
| 10) A teaching | B ability | C instruction | D help |
| 11) A concentrate | B remind | C forget | D memorize |
| 12) A how | B what | C why | D it |
| 13) A the way | B heart | C now | D law |
| 14) A information | B success | C understanding | D attention |
| 15) A pass | B waste | C tell | D use |

Exercise 24. Use a proper verb to fill in the gaps below. Put the verb in the correct form.

Prompts: to teach, to do, to do homework, to learn, to give a lecture on, to take notes, to do a course, to take/do an exam, to pass an exam, to fail (final) exams, to get a degree

John well at school. He always found it easy to and he always his homework. He all his school exams. Now he geography at university. He is also a special geology course. He enjoys sitting in lectures, listening to the lecturer and notes. He will his final exams next year. If he, he will a degree in geography. If he, he will be very sad. He would like to become a geography lecturer. He would like to lectures.

Exercise 25. Provide the correct prepositions or adverbial particles joining two words or phrases:

- A**
- 1) a good ear ... music
 - 2) to catch ... the group mates
 - 3) to be behind the class... grammar
 - 4) a good knowledge ... modern literature

- 5) a lecture/seminar ... psychology
- 6) to graduate ... Oxford University
- 7) a mark ... a subject
- 8) a mark ... an answer
- 9) to make a study ... the rules
- 10) a good memory/no memory ... figures/dates/symbols/rules
- 11) to hand ... a test paper
- 12) to hand ... the texts
- 13) to borrow a textbook ... the library
- 14) to excuse smb ... coming late
- 15) to sit/revise ... an exam
- 16) to praise smb ... his progress in studies/good behaviour

B

1. Jim is good ... memorizing foreign words. (at, on) 2. Can you help me ... this problem? (with, at) 3. I didn't attend the previous lesson ... Phonetics because I mixed up the time-table. (in, on) 4. We have lectures ... Linguistics once a week. (on, in). 5. My brother studies ... the fourth year ... the University. (on, in; at, in) 6. Jane got an excellent mark ... her translation. (for, in) 7. Where can I find the Dean? - He is probably ... the Institute canteen. (in, at) 8. I've been revising ... the test... morning. (for, to; for, since) 9. Mike is too lazy. The teacher won't put ... with that very long, (up, in) 10. Yesterday I had my last exam. And I did well ... it, thanks God! (in, at) - Oh, you did! 11. Why were you absent ... the lesson? (at, from) 12. What did you do ... the lesson yesterday? (at, on)

Exercise 26. Paraphrase the following sentences using the active vocabulary.

1. I can't remember names (have no memory for).
2. She never misses her classes (attend).
3. Mike knows history well (to have a good knowledge of smth).
4. They are studying a lot of subjects (learn/do).
5. Mr. Black is an Oxford graduate (graduate from).
6. Her daughter is leaving school this year (to finish).
7. She learns things quickly (a quick learner).
8. You can find this textbook in the library (to borrow from).
9. Let me use your grammar notes, please (to lend).
10. I am sorry I am late (excuse).
11. She didn't pass the exam I am afraid (fail).
12. What subject are you studying this term (do)?
13. Ann is preparing for her end-of-term test (revise, sit).
14. Her pronunciation is getting better (improve).
15. She is good at linguistics (to have a good knowledge of).

16. Professor Petrov is giving lectures on old-Russian style in architecture (to lecture).

Exercise 27. Respond to the following expressing your agreement, advice or disapproval.

Model 1: -John is good at history.

-No wonder. He has a good memory for dates, names and things.

Model 2: -Lucy can't spell.

-She must learn the vocabulary and practise writing every day.

1. -I am behind the other students in grammar. - ... (to revise the rules, to practise the use of the grammar patterns, to catch up with).
2. -I am afraid I may fail the exam in linguistics. - (to make notes, to do a lot of revision, to revise from the lecture notes).
3. - The teacher praises him for his progress. - ... (to do well, to get on well in one's exams).
4. -I am not going to the party. -... (to change one's mind).
5. - She is doing her fifth year at the Institute. - ... (to graduate in a couple of months, to take one's final exams).
6. - His knowledge of the subject is poor. - ... (never to do any preparation).
7. - Our time is up. -... (to hand in the test-papers).
8. - Has Nell passed her English exam? -... (to have bad luck, to fail).

Exercise 28. Read the following sentences and translate them into Russian.

1. A maths teacher teaches maths. Her students study maths. 2. After school, students do homework. 3. At primary school, children learn to read and write. 4. A university teacher gives a lecture on chemistry and the students take notes. 5. Students can do an English course in many colleges and schools. At the end of a course, you often have to take/do an exam. You hope to pass your exams. You don't want to fail your exams. 6. If you pass your final exams at university, you get a degree.

7. It is the beginning of the term. Before each lesson begins, Stephen has to look at his timetable to see which subject he has next. There are lessons in mathematics, English, geography, history, and science; they are the subjects on the curriculum for this year. The teacher first makes sure that the class have done their English homework, and she goes through the answers with them. The syllabus for this year includes practice in listening, and this week the class listens to a cassette of a policeman talking about his job. The teacher writes the new vocabulary on the board for the students to copy down. Then the students do an exercise in their workbooks. They fill in the answers, and the teacher tells them that they can also look up words that they don't know in their dictionary. For homework this week, the

teacher tells the class to read a passage from their textbook/course book. At the end of this term, Stephen will leave school and start looking for a job.

Exercise 29. Translate into English:

1. Аня учится в институте.
2. Я собираюсь повторить некоторые темы к семинару по психологии.
3. У вас часто бывают контрольные работы по словарю?
4. Лена пропустила много занятий. Мне кажется, что она не сдаст экзамены по английскому языку.
5. Виктор готовится к экзамену по истории. Он повторяет учебник и конспектирует работы известных учёных.
6. Ты писала конспект на прошлой лекции? - Да. - Одолжи мне его, пожалуйста, я хочу его переписать.
7. Полезно делать записи, когда читаете книгу на иностранном языке.
8. Катя никогда не опаздывает на лекции. Она всегда приходит вовремя.
9. Как часто у вас бывают семинары по языкознанию?
10. Андрей много работает над языком в этом семестре. Я думаю, что он сдаст экзамен успешно.
11. Люся много работает над произношением, но пока ещё не добились значительных результатов.
12. Аня легко справляется с домашним заданием
13. Ты говоришь слишком быстро, я не успеваю записывать.
14. Какой институт ты окончил? А когда ты окончил школу?
15. Кто преподавал у вас фонетику в прошлом семестре?
16. Ему трудно заучивать тексты наизусть и пересказывать их в классе.
17. Вы пропустили много занятий, и вам нелегко будет догнать группу.
18. Какую оценку вы получили за изложение?
19. Студент хорошо отвечал, и преподаватель поставил ему отличную оценку.
20. У неё хорошие оценки по всем предметам.
21. На прошлой неделе у нас была контрольная по грамматике, и я получила «три».
22. На занятиях по практике устной речи мы отвечаем на вопросы, высказываемся по ситуациям, делаем устные и письменные упражнения.
23. Если вы хотите избавиться от ошибок в произношении, вы должны усерднее работать в лаборатории.
24. Он не сдавал с нами экзамен, так как был болен.
25. Мы сдаём экзамен по английскому языку в январе, я надеюсь, что мы все сдадим его (никто его не провалит).

Reading

Reading 1. At the English Lesson

I have English on Monday, Wednesday and Thursday. English is usually the second lesson.

At English we speak, read and write. We speak about school, pupils and teachers, about lessons, animals and nature, about our friends, sports and games. We read books and stories about children, nature, and school life. We write letters, words, sentences, exercises and dictations.

We play at English, too. We sing songs and learn poems.

I like English. I can read and write well, but I can't speak English well yet.

Exercise 1. Fill in the missing words.

1. I have English on ..., ..., ...
2. At English we ..., ... and ...
3. We ... English songs and ... poems.
4. I can read and ... well, but I can't ... English well yet.

Exercise 2. Say whether the sentences are true or false.

1. English is usually the second lesson.
2. We write letters, words, sentences, exercises, dictations and stories.
3. We don't play at English.
4. I can sing and write well, but I can't speak English well.

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Английский язык у меня обычно в понедельник, среду и четверг.
2. Мы говорим о школе, учениках и учителях, об уроках, животных и природе, о наших друзьях, спорте и играх.
3. Я люблю английский.
4. Я могу хорошо читать и писать, но пока не очень хорошо говорю по-английски.

Exercise 4. Answer the questions.

1. When do you have English?
2. Is English usually the first lesson?
3. What do you do at English?
4. What do you speak and read about?
5. You write letters, words, sentences, exercises and dictations, don't you?
6. Do you play, sing songs or learn poems at the lessons of English?
7. Do you like English?
8. Can you speak English well?

Reading 2. Studying in South Korea

Exercise 1. Read the text about young people in South Korea.

What time do you have breakfast? Where do you have lunch? Do you go out with your friends for a coffee after school or after work? Do you

work in the evenings, or do you have dinner with family or friends? Life is very different for many young people in South Korea. It's very important for people to go to a good university, and find a good job. So study is very, very important! Young people get up at about six o'clock, have breakfast with their family, and then go to school. Schools in South Korea start at seven o'clock.

After five hours of lessons in the morning, it's time for lunch. Most people have lunch at school. Then there are more lessons until six o'clock ... but that's not the end! Many young Koreans go to the library and study from about eight o'clock to eleven or twelve o'clock, when the libraries close. At that time, they go home in a special minibus. Most students don't go to bed before one or two o'clock, and then the next day after just four or five hours of sleep, it's time to get up again!

Exercise 2. Give Russian equivalents to the underlined words and phrases.

Exercise 3. Answer these questions.

- 1 What time do most young people get up in South Korea?
- 2 What time do schools open in South Korea?
- 3 Where do young people have lunch?
- 4 What time do schools in South Korea finish?
- 5 Where do many young people go in the evening?
- 6 What time do the libraries close?
- 7 How do people go home?
- 8 What time do they go to bed?

Reading 3. Our English Studies

Exercise 1. Read the text.

Normally, we have one or two English classes a day. We do phonetics, grammar and oral work. In our phonetic classes we have a lot of pronunciation practice. We are trained to imitate native speakers. Those who have a good ear for the sounds and intonation learn more quickly than others. Anyway, it is rather a hard job which takes a lot of time and effort but you have to do it if you want to make progress.

In our grammar classes we practise the use of various grammar patterns and learn to do linguistic analysis. We do a lot of exercises, translation and grammar tests.

Our classes in oral and written work where we do all kinds of work take a lot of our time. We make up dialogues, talk on various situations, and do vocabulary and spelling tests. Once a week we write a dictation. Regular practice helps us to get a good command of the language.

The teachers give us oral and written homework. We have to learn the new vocabulary, intonation and grammar rules and do some exercises

orally and in writing. We often go to the language laboratory to do lab work and listen to the texts which we reproduce in class. If your homework is carefully done, you usually answer well in class.

Students sometimes complain that they have too much homework but if you plan your day well you can manage (cope with) it without much difficulty.

As far as the other subjects, the term is divided between theoretical and practical work: we have a few weeks of lectures followed by seminars. This term we are having lectures on linguistics, history and psychology. We are to take notes at the lectures and we can manage it fairly well, unless the lecturer speaks too fast so that you may find it hard to follow him. Those who miss a lecture usually copy up the notes if they wish to be successful in the exam. When we have seminars, we spend a lot of time in the reading-room revising the material.

Twice a year, in January and June, we have our end-of-term exams.

Exercise 2. Find adjectives that determine the following nouns: *work; classes; practice; speakers; job; patterns; tests; analysis; situations; command; homework; rules; laboratory* **and translate them into Russian.**

Exercise 3. Say what we usually do:

- a) in our phonetic classes;
- b) in our grammar classes;
- c) in our classes in oral and written work;
- d) at home.

Exercise 4. Answer the following questions:

1. Who learns more quickly in our group?
2. Why is pronunciation practice rather a hard job?
3. What helps us to get a good command of the language?
4. What kind of homework do the teachers give us?
5. When do we usually answer well in class?
6. Why do students sometimes complain?
7. When do we cope with our homework without much difficulty?
8. What can you say about a students' academic year?

Exercise 5. Retell the text according to the plan and add ideas of your own using your active words:

- Phonetic classes.
- Grammar classes.
- Classes in oral and written work.
- Homework.

Reading 4. My English Studies

Exercise 1. Read the text with the help of dictionary.

Learning a foreign language is not an easy thing. It is a long and slow process that takes a lot of time and efforts.

We began studying English in the fourth form of the secondary school. We started with the ABC, transcription and sounds. Then we learnt some English words, conversational phrases and dialogues by heart, read and translated easy texts. Once a week we worked in the language laboratory listening to the recorded tapes and doing laboratory works.

From lesson to lesson we improved our knowledge, learnt more and more new words, grammatical structures and put them into practice of speaking. We enjoyed our English classes and prepared carefully for them. At home we tried to listen to different educational programmes over the radio, watched English films on TV.

Soon we were able not only to read and translate texts but to discuss their contents in English, to communicate with one another making useful statements in real-life situations.

One should say that English is not an easy language to learn. There is a big problem of spelling, of the large number of exceptions to any rule. This language is very idiomatic and the prepositions are terrible. English is one of those languages which may seem easy in the beginning, but then the bridge between basic knowledge and mastery takes a long time to cross. But if you do cross this bridge it will give you great satisfaction. You will be able to speak to people from other countries, to read foreign authors in the original, which makes your outlook wider. It is not surprising that many intellectuals and well-educated people know many foreign languages.

I want to know foreign languages because I have always been interested in foreign countries, their cultures and peoples. I want to learn English in particular not only because it is the language of such great countries as the USA and Great Britain, but also because it has become the international language, the language of progressive science and engineering. To know English today is absolutely necessary for every educated man, for every good specialist.

Exercise 2. Answer the following questions on the text.

1. Is it easy to learn foreign languages?
2. Which language in the world is spoken by most people?
3. When did you begin learning English?
4. What was the process of learning?
5. How long did it take you to prepare for your English lesson?
6. Was there a language laboratory at your school?
7. How often did you work there?
8. Can you speak English well?
9. How can you improve your English?
10. Is it difficult for you to learn English?

11. Why is English not an easy language to learn?
12. Can you read English books in the original?
13. Have you got any English books and dictionaries at home?
14. What advantages do the people have who know foreign languages?
15. Why do you want to learn English?

Reading 5. Learning a Foreign Language

Exercise 1. Read the text and mark the most significant aspects of learning a foreign language. Discuss them in pairs. Sum up the information.

The most difficult thing for people who want to learn a foreign language is that the foreign language is very different from their own. It's not at all like the language we have been speaking since before we can remember. Our native language has a powerful influence on us and under such circumstances it is natural that we have the feeling that our language is the most beautiful, the most perfect and the most logical.

The first thing that we must learn as we begin to study a foreign language is that each language is the best possible language for the people who use it. We cannot expect a person from India to think and act exactly like a person from France as well as we cannot expect the language of India to be exactly like French. Thus many of the problems in language learning will disappear if we understand this fact.

There are other attitudes which it's necessary to develop in order to make progress in language learning. The most important of these is that any foreign language requires constant practice. You can never be sure that you really know how to use a word or a phrase only because you have seen or heard it for several times. You must be ready to repeat new words again and again until you really use them automatically without having to think about them. At the same time one should remember that learning a language is much more than just memorising long vocabulary lists and such aspects as pronunciation and grammar must be paid more attention to, especially, in the early stages. It's impossible to enrich vocabulary if you don't know how to use the grammatical structures as to learn words without knowing how to use them in speech is something like to build a house without a plan.

So if you want to learn to speak a language well, if you want to master it, you are to keep working steadily, to do your best and to work hard at all the aspects of the language, practise the language using it at every opportunity and what is extremely important - have patience.

The proverb says "No pains, no gains".

Exercise 2. Divide into several groups and make up the tasks on the text.

Reading 6. What's the secret of successful language learning?

Exercise 1. Two experienced teachers of English A. Banton and T. Pelc give their opinion on the secret of successful language learning.

Alastair Banton is a teacher at a private language school in the UK. He has also taught English in Japan.

1 I think the most important thing is that you really have to want to learn the language – without that, you won't get very far. You also have to believe that you will do it ... imagine yourself using the language confidently, and think. Yes, I can do that'.

2 Then there are other things: of course you need to work hard, but at the same time you need to enjoy it and not get frustrated when you feel you're not making much progress. And you have to be realistic – learning a language takes time, and you can't expect to know and understand everything in a few weeks!

3 Also, you should try to 'develop an ear' for the language – not only to recognise the sounds of the language and to understand what people are saying, but also notice the exact words and phrases that people use ... and then try to use them yourself. Some people can do this naturally, but others have to learn how to do it – that's where having a good teacher is important!

Teresa Pelc is a teacher of English in Poland. She has taught English in a secondary school for a number of years.

4 For me, motivation is the most important thing. You have to be ready to study grammar, read a lot, listen to English songs, radio and TV, and what's more you have to do these things systematically.

5 It is so easy to forget what you have just learnt ... that's why I needed a teacher to force me to study. Even the most motivated students need that extra push sometimes. I believe that only a very few people can learn a language on their own.

6 Learning a language can be quite stressful, especially for adults ... suddenly; we speak like children and make fools of ourselves! But if you're motivated, you learn to overcome this. It all sounds like very hard work – and it is. It is also very enjoyable – I praise my students for everything they do well, however small it is. Many of them are very successful and speak English better than me, and some of them have even become English teachers themselves!

Exercise 2. As you read the text mark whose idea it is:

- hard work
- enjoying learning
- really believing that you will be successful
- having a good teacher
- really wanting to learn (motivation)
- studying lots of grammar
- getting praise from your teacher

- being realistic about the progress you can make
- ‘developing an ear’ for the language
- reading and listening to lots of English

Exercise 3. Which phrases or words mean:

- you won't make much progress
- become angry because you can't do what you want to do
- see and pay attention to
- often and carefully, and in an organized way
- alone, without help
- do smth that makes you seem stupid

Exercise 4. Complete the gaps in the summary using proper verbs.

Alastair says that if you want to (a)... a language, confidence is very important. You also have to (b) ... hard, and not (c)... frustrated if you don't (d)... very much progress. You should try to develop an ear for language; this will help you to (e)... what people are saying much more easily. Of course it's also important to (f)... a good teacher!

Teresa advises her students to (g)... grammar, (h)... newspapers, magazines etc. and (i)...to the radio, pop songs etc. You need a teacher to help you, because people often (j)... what they've learned if they don't have someone to 'push' them. She never forgets to (k)... her learners when they are successful. Many now speak English better than her and have (l) ... English teachers themselves!

Exercise 5. Which pieces of advice are most useful? Why?

Reading 7.

Exercise. Read about three different students of English (Bernard, Gabriela and Gloria) below and say how successful you think they will be in learning English. Explain your answer.

BERNARD



Bernard takes learning English very seriously. He's particularly keen on English grammar – he spends many hours at home studying grammar books and doing exercises. In class, he always has lots of questions for his teacher – in fact he knows so much about grammar that sometimes his teacher finds it hard to answer! Bernard is also keen to learn vocabulary – he always has his bilingual dictionary next to him in class, and looks up any new words he meets. He prefers this to listening to the teacher's explanations, because he likes to have an exact translation of things. At home, as well as doing his homework and studying his grammar books, he spends twenty minutes every day studying lists of new vocabulary that he has learnt. He quite enjoys his English lessons, but he feels that his teacher wastes too much time on groupwork. He doesn't like speaking to other students – they don't speak English well enough, and he doesn't like making mistakes that the teacher can't correct. So usually during these parts of the lesson, he reads one of his grammar books, or looks through the dictionary – he feels he's learning more this way. □

GABRIELA



Gabriela really enjoys her English lessons, though she's very busy in her job and doesn't always have enough time to study. She likes her teacher and her classmates, and enjoys speaking English, both with the teacher and with other students. She always tries to say as much as she can, even if the topic is not something that really interests her – it's still good practice. If there's something she wants to express or doesn't understand, she asks her teacher for the right word. She tries to correct herself and to use new words that she has learnt, but she doesn't worry too much if she makes mistakes. She knows she often gets things wrong, but she believes that you have to make mistakes in order to learn. Gabriela's fairly good at grammar – when she meets new grammar, she tries to work out the rules for herself, but of course she's not always right! Outside her lessons she doesn't always manage to do all her homework, but she does try to do it as carefully as possible, reading it through, and trying to correct the mistakes before she hands it in. Apart from that, she sometimes gets the chance to practise her English at work, when she meets English-speaking colleagues from the international offices of her company. She really enjoys this and makes a special effort to chat to them, even if she sometimes feels a bit shy about the level of her English! □

GLORIA



Gloria doesn't really know why she's learning English, but perhaps it'll be useful some day. Anyway, her parents are paying a lot of money for her lessons so, as she sees it, it's her teacher's job to make sure that she learns. She tries to come to most of the lessons, but she's generally a bit late because she's been out dancing the night before, and when she does arrive, she often isn't feeling too good. Her teacher always explains new vocabulary and grammar in English, but Gloria doesn't usually listen very hard to these parts of the lesson – her friend Monica speaks much better English than she does, so she normally asks her to translate what the teacher's said. Sometimes the teacher asks her questions and expects her to answer in English, but the questions often don't interest her much, and anyway she's a bit shy about speaking English, so she usually just answers in one word, or looks at the floor until the teacher asks someone else. They have to do quite a lot of groupwork in her class too, but for Gloria this is a good chance to find out what her friends have been doing, so they usually have a good chat – not in English, obviously! □

Reading 8. My University

Exercise 1. Read the text.

Last summer I made up my mind to become a teacher of English. So I passed the entrance exams to the State Linguistic University successfully and now I am a first year student of the English Department.

There are five departments at our University which train both teachers and interpreters in English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Polish, Turkish, Japanese and some other languages. About 5 thousand students study here. The English Department is the largest one.

The Students of the University take a five-year course including two compulsory languages. There is an option of taking a third language but you have to pay a certain fee for it.

The faculty of the University consists of lecturers and tutors. They give lectures, hold seminars and have tutorials with the students in various subjects: English phonetics, grammar, and conversation, Belarusian, Russian, Latin, Linguistics, Psychology, History, etc.

As the proverb has it "No pains, no gains". The students take great pains with their classes to gain as much knowledge as possible. They have at their disposal a great number of halls, classrooms, language media centres and labs equipped with all sorts of audio-visual aids, which help them to practise the pronunciation, get a better command of the language and get rid of mistakes in the shortest possible time. In the library there are thousands of books on different subjects and in different languages. As soon as a school-leaver is admitted to the University he is allowed to borrow from the University library any book he needs. A lot of students take part in the work of scholarly societies and clubs.

For those who go in for sports there are different sport clubs. For those who are fond of poetry, art, music and dancing there are a great number of amateur groups where the students have every opportunity to develop their talents and follow their bent.

So we may say that the University has all facilities for studies and extra-curricular activities.

Exercise 2. Find the English equivalents:

иметь в своём распоряжении, избавляться от ошибок в кратчайшее время, готовить учителей английского языка, брать книги в библиотеке, консультации по предмету, иметь возможность выбора третьего языка, усердно работать на занятиях, книги по различным предметам на различных языках, совершенствовать знание языка, быть принятым в университет, иметь всё необходимое для учёбы и внеурочной деятельности, пройти пятилетний курс обучения.

Exercise 3. Answer the questions about your university:

1. What departments does your university have?
2. Do you have any optional courses? Which would you like to have?
3. What kinds of classes do you have?
4. Do you take great pains with your classes?
5. What aids do you have at your disposal?
6. Are you satisfied with the facilities?
7. What are the ways of getting a better command of the language?
8. How does your library work?
9. What extra-curricular activities does the University offer? Do you take part in any of them?
10. What amateur clubs would you like to join?

Exercise 4. Speak on the following:

the departments;

the curriculum;

the syllabus

at your University

Speaking

Exercise 1. Say what kinds of work that you do in class you find:

- a) the most difficult/the easiest;
- b) the most enjoyable/the least enjoyable;
- c) the most helpful/the least helpful;
- d) stimulating/dull.

Model: I find listening to the tapes very much stimulating.

Exercise 2. Read the dialogue and dramatize it in class. Use the bolded expressions.

Teacher: Good morning, students. **Sit down**, please. **Is** anyone **away** from the lesson?

Monitor: No, nobody is. All the students of our group **are present**. Oh, sorry, Kate Krasnova **is absent**.

Teacher: **What's up?** Is she ill?

Monitor: She is. It's **quinsy** with a high temperature.

Teacher: **That's too bad**. But let's begin our lesson. Ann Ivanova, take your **exercise-book**, please, come to the blackboard, and write Exercise 3 to check the **homework**.

Ivanova: **Shall I write it in transcription?**

Teacher: Yes, please. And you, Julia Volkova, read **Text 8**. All the rest **write down** the mistakes, please, if she has any. Will you read **louder**, please? Don't forget that you are a future teacher. **That'll do**. Any mistakes, students?

Stogov: **I believe**, Julia Volkova has some **palatalization** of the **sounds** [m] and [n] in the nouns "family" and "Benny".

Teacher: That's right. Please, Julia, repeat the nouns three times. You must read the text again next time, **I'm afraid**. Make your reading **distinct**. Now, students, look at the blackboard.

Ivanova: Am I to read the exercise?

Teacher: Certainly. (Ivanova reads). **Is** everything **correct**, Helen Bogatova?

Bogatova: I think, it is.

Teacher: Thank you, Ann Ivanova. Clean the blackboard, please, and go to your place. Have you got the **head-phones**, monitor?

Monitor: I have. **Here they are**.

Teacher: Very well. Let's listen to the new text. Open your books at page 90. Will you please **switch on** the **tape-recorder**? Thank you.

Exercise 3. Study the models and make up your own dialogues:

1. - Have you written your composition, Ben? It's due today.
 - Of course. And what about you?
 - Not yet. I didn't think it would be so difficult and started it only yesterday.

- Well, it will teach you a lesson. Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today, you know.
- 2.- Would you like to go and see Nell today?
 - Well, I was thinking of learning some English.
 - Oh, but you can do that tomorrow.
 - Yes, and I can see Nell tomorrow, too.
 - 3.- Why doesn't Jim work harder?
 - You know that very well - because he's lazy.
 - Do you think the teacher will put up with that very long?
 - I'm afraid she won't, and Jim will have to repeat the year.
 - 4.- As sure as eggs are eggs, Bob won't do well in the exam.
 - Why do you think so?
 - He has missed much and doesn't attend the extra lessons now.
 - No fear. He's quite at home in the subject.
 - 5.- Paul wouldn't like to fail in his exam, would he?
 - Of course, he wouldn't. Who would!
 - But he hasn't been working very hard. He thinks he is clever enough to pass his exams without much work, doesn't he?
 - Yes, he relies too much on his memory. But I doubt it can carry him out when doing Latin.
 - 6.- Margaret is looking very happy this evening.
 - She did well in English, you know.
 - What mark?
 - Excellent. Worked hard at the language. And what about Jane? Did she get through?
 - On the contrary. She failed miserably.
 - Oh, really!
 - No wonder! She cut lectures, did not attend seminars and was late for tutorials, as a rule.
 - Then it serves her right.
 - 7.- When will your exams begin?
 - Oh, they are not far off. I'm to take an exam in Linguistics next week. Here is the time-table of my exams.
 - You are nervous, aren't you?
 - Of course I am. Everybody is.
 - Are you revising for your exams now?
 - No, not yet: Before the exams we are going to have a test in English. I'm revising for the test. We'll have this test tomorrow.
 - 8.- Hello, Dick! Are you taking your exams?
 - I've already passed my last exam.
 - What did you get for mathematics?
 - I got a distinction. You passed your exams too, didn't you?
 - No, I didn't. I failed in physics.

- What a pity! I'm sorry for you! How did it happen?
 - It's difficult to explain. My memory failed me and I forgot the simplest things. I think it was the result of a sleepless night.
- 9.- Are you still studying English?
- Yes, but I don't get enough time for it. I have so many other things to do.
 - It's the same with me. I can read English now without much difficulty, but I still find it rather difficult to speak English. And I don't always understand people when they speak English to me.
 - We don't hear enough spoken English, I suppose. Do you listen to the BBC programmes?
 - Yes. That helps me to understand spoken English but not to speak English.
 - We must speak English all the time.
 - Yes, you are right. It's the best way to master a language.

Exercise 4. Make up situations using the following phrases:

1. to be interested in, intensive studies of foreign languages, a high level of knowledge, to speak to foreigners, to communicate with other people, once (twice) a week.
2. to learn new words, to answer the teacher's questions, to make up dialogues, to do grammar exercises, to recite poems by heart, to speak on different topics, to discuss books (political events), to translate from English into Russian;
3. it takes me ..., to get ready for, to be good (not bad) at, to read with/without a dictionary, to work hard at

Listening

Listening 1.

(Cutting Edge pre-intermediate (Students' book), module 3)

Exercise 1. Listen to the people in the photos talking about learning foreign languages and say whether the following statements are true or false.

Ildiko: Most foreigners can speak Hungarian

Karina: My husband can't speak Danish.

I don't speak Greek at home.

When we go to Greece I can talk to my husbands' parents.

Dorothy: I study Italian for a special reason.

Daniel: I don't study English for my university exams.

If we don't pass we can continue into the second year.

If we pass, we can take another course instead of English.

Exercise 2. Answer the questions:

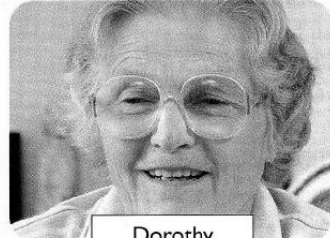
- Which language are they learning?
- Why are they learning foreign languages?



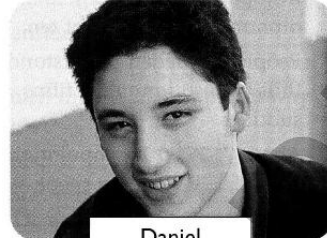
Ildiko



Karina



Dorothy



Daniel

Listening 2. Our Classroom.

(Английский для начинающих, unit 1, part 2)

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Our classroom is on the ... floor.
2. There's an aisle between
3. The teacher's desk is ... the door.
4. There are a lot of things on
5. There is a ... above it.
6. There is a bookcase

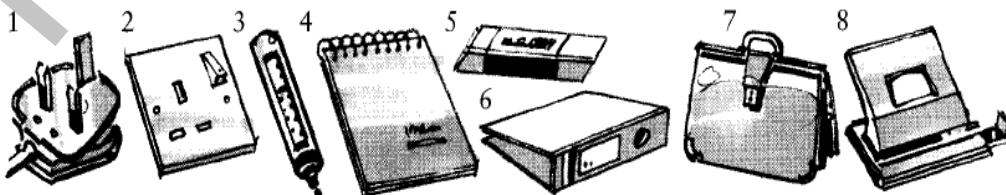
Exercise 2. Write down the names of the things that are in the classroom.

Exercise 3. Answer the following questions:

1. Where are you studying at the moment?
2. On what floor is your classroom?
3. What's there on both sides of the aisle in the classroom?
4. What teaching aids are there in the classroom?
5. How many windows are there in the classroom?
6. What's there along the walls?
7. Is the classroom nice?

Writing

Exercise 1. Write down the names of the objects in the pictures.



1 _____
2 _____

3 _____
4 _____

5 _____
6 _____

7 _____
8 _____

Exercise 2. Write about your usual lesson of English. Use the following text as example.

Our group has two English classes a week: on Tuesday and on Friday. When the teacher comes, she opens the door and we enter the classroom and sit down at our desks. Then we open our bags and take our pencil cases, exercise-books and text-books. And soon our class begins... We usually start it by pronouncing different words and sounds. Then we are usually invited to the blackboard and answer the words we learn by heart. After that we usually do some exercises from the text-book. These exercises teach us to ask questions, to form negative sentences. Then our teacher hands in our exercise-books for tests and we usually write spelling tests and a quiz. During our classes we speak mostly English, but sometimes, when the students don't understand the teacher or the task in the text-book, we start speaking Russian. What I like best of all in our English classes is the friendly atmosphere in class. The funny joke is always greeted. At the end of the lesson the teacher always gives us much homework. It usually consists of learning new words or a text by heart and doing exercises in a written form. Then we all say good-bye to our teacher and begin preparing for a new class. I want to tell that all English lessons are among the most interesting and the most exciting lessons; that's why I like them very much.

Exercise 3. Read the dialogue and write why you study English and what problems you have.

Carlos: How important is English to you?

Armgrad: Really very important, actually. I need more and more for my work.

Carlos: Is speaking very important?

Armgrad: Yes, it is. And listening too, of course. It isn't enough to be able to speak. You have to be able to understand what people say to you as well.

Carlos: What difficulties do you have with writing and reading?

Armgrad: Reading is all right, although some of the technical reporters take me a very long time. Writing is the hardest. I have to write business letters to the head office in New York and I am always worried about my grammar and my spelling.

Carlos: Have you got any other information to give me?

Armgrad: Yes, my work is not my only reason for learning English. I often watch English-language films on TV. Also I've just met someone living in England who I hope to get to know a lot better.

UNIT III. PLACE OF RESIDENCE

Section A. My Flat / House

Active Words

1. Houses / Dwelling / Accommodation

building	lodging house	chalet
flat / apartment	hut	ranch-house
private house	tent	igloo
detached house	farmhouse	wigwam
semi-detached house	caravan	hostel
bungalow	barracks	penthouse
cottage / country house	log-cabin	bed and breakfast (B&B)
dacha	farmhouse	hotel / motel
terraced house	palace	guest house
block of flats	castle	old people's home
multi-storied house	villa	
skyscraper / high-rise	mansion	

2. Rooms

living-room	spare (guest)-room	entrance hall / corridor
sitting-room	study	pantry
dining-room	bed-sit	utility room
lounge	studio	cellar
bedroom	kitchen	basement
children's room	bathroom	attic
nursery	toilet / lavatory (loo)	lumber room

3. Describing a flat

dark / light	superb	draughty
noisy / quiet	lovely	stuffy
big / huge / enormous	(in)convenient	gloomy
small / tiny	(un)comfortable	ugly
modern / old-fashioned	(un)suitable	neglected
spacious	cosy	well-maintained
elegant	luxurious	well-planned
attractive	damp	well-proportioned
charming	chilly	(un)furnished

4. Inside the House

storey / level	flight of staircase	foundation
floor	handrails	roof
ceiling	landing	chimney
wall	closet	balcony
(French) window	loft / attic	shutters
windowsill	fireplace	spy hole / peephole

5. Outside the House

aerial	garage	(tool)shed
driveway	gate	pond
path	greenhouse	pool
façade / front	drainpipe	court
terrace / patio	gutter	cowshed
flowerbed	hedge	pigsty
porch	lawn	stable
entrance	garden	kennel
front / back door	kitchen garden	window-
name board	orchard	frame/pane/box
doormat	yard	swimming pool
fence	barn	summer furniture

6. Modern Conveniences

electricity	shower	radiator
gas	chute	swimming pool
hot and cold running	lift (elevator)	cooker hood
water	air-conditioning	Jacuzzi
central heating	electric fire	telephone
bath	boiler	TV (cable, satellite)

7. Location

downstairs / upstairs	under / below	at the end of
downtown / uptown	above / over	in the middle of
in the centre	behind / in front of	in the corner of
in the suburbs	opposite / against	at the bottom of
in a residential area	between	on top of
on the outskirts	among	inside / outside
on / in / by / at	on the left / right of	
near / next to	to the left / right of	

8. Building Materials

cement	silver	iron	crystal
concrete	stone	sand	glass
steel	brick	paper	parquet
gold	wood	tile	linoleum

9. Decorating

to decorate	to whitewash	to (re)arrange
to fix	to paper	to renovate
to furnish	to install	to shift
to paint	to repair	to cover

10. Living out

host / hostess	roommate	to stay at
landlady / landlord	tenant / lodger	to share a flat with
owner	to host smb	to purchase / to buy

to rent / to pay a rent
to lend money
to borrow money

to inherit
to own
to belong to

mortgage
rent

11. Furnishing

living(sitting)-room:

armchair
bookcase
bookshelf
curtains / blinds
curtain rail
(coffee) table
cushion
puff
chandelier / lustre

desk / standard lamp
bureau
fireplace
(fitted) carpet
sideboard
sofa(-bed)
settee / couch
vase
houseplant

ashtray
CD/DVD/record
player
colour TV set
stereo system
ornaments
picture
carpet
bookcase

bedroom:

(single, double, camp,
bunk) bed
(bedside / wall) lamp
bedside table
bedside rug
bed clothing / bedding
blanket

chest of drawers
dressing-table
mattress
pillow
pillow-case
sheet
bedspread

wardrobe
wall unit
mirror
ironing board
alarm-clock
jewellery box

kitchen:

(electric/gas) cooker
kitchen suite
kitchen table
stool
tablecloth
cupboard
dishwasher
dish drainer
washing machine
food processor
toaster
cooker hood
(microwave)oven
fridge
freezer

mixer
kettle
cutlery (forks, spoons,
knives)
cooking utensils (pans,
saucepans, frying
pans, cups, plates,
dishes, saucers, a
mincer, glasses)
coffee-pot
tea-pot
butter-dish
sugar bowl
milk jar
sink

taps for water
waste (rubbish) bin
worktop
tray
bread-bin
napkin
jug
dish-cloth
washing-up liquid
grill
coffee grinder
blender
salt cellar
pepper box

bathroom, toilet:

bath
shower
toilet pan (bowl) /
flush-toilet
toilet paper
bidet

towel
towel rail
sponge
soap
soap dish
washbasin

shower curtain
bathroom scales
bath mat
shampoo
toothbrush
toothpaste

brush holder
cabinet
electric shaver

shaving brush
razor
hair brush / comb

soap powder
laundry basket

hall:

coat rack / hanger
hall stand
doorstep
door-knocker (bell)

keyhole
letter-box
lock and chain
peg

(light)switch
clothes brush
mirror

12.

to live
to reside
to inhabit
to lodge
to settle
to enter / to leave
to move into / out
to be at hand
to be located

to lay out
to face
to overlook
to look on
to design
to lead
to occupy
to lack
to contain

to surround
to be situated
to be made of
to be crammed with
to turn into
to lock / to open
to draw / to pull

Vocabulary Exercises

Exercise 1. Match the type of house with its definition. Combine two parts into full sentences.

Model: A detached house is a kind of house which is

● semi-detached house:	-a building that has many storeys
● terraced house:	-a large building with many flats / apartments
● cottage:	-a large fortified building made in the past to defend people against enemies, once a residence of a ruler
● bungalow:	-a house with only one store (no upstairs)
● villa:	-a very tall modern city building
● castle:	-joined to several houses to form a row
● palace:	-joined to one other house
● high-rise block:	-a small house on wheels which is pulled by a car
● shed:	-not joined to any other house
● detached house:	-a small house in the country or in a village
● skyscraper:	-a large house with big gardens / a rented house in a holiday resort / tourist area
● block of flats:	-a large and richly furnished building
● caravan:	-a small, roughly made building used for storing garden tools

Exercise 2. What sort of accommodation do (did) these people have?

- a queen
- an Eskimo
- a Red Indian
- a cowboy
- a travelling agent away from home
- skiers in the mountains
- a well-off couple on holidays in France
- a camper
- a successful advertising agent
- a tramp
- an old man with no living relatives
- holiday-makers who find hotels too big and expensive
- a retired couple
- a young person living alone
- a couple with/without children

Exercise 3. Complete each sentence (a-e) with a suitable ending (1-5) so that the meaning of the word in *italics* is clear.

- a) I would prefer to live in a cottage
- b) My grandmother bought a bungalow
- c) Jenny lives in a small flat.....
- d) Sue's new house is unfurnished.....
- e) My house is semi-detached.....

- 1 on the third floor of a modern block.
- 2 but the rent is so high that she cannot afford much furniture.
- 3 in a small village in the country.
- 4 and the neighbours often bang on the wall.
- 5 because she had difficulty climbing stairs.

Exercise 4. Study the pictures and identify types of houses 1-16.



1



2



3



4



5

6

7



8

9

10



11

12

13

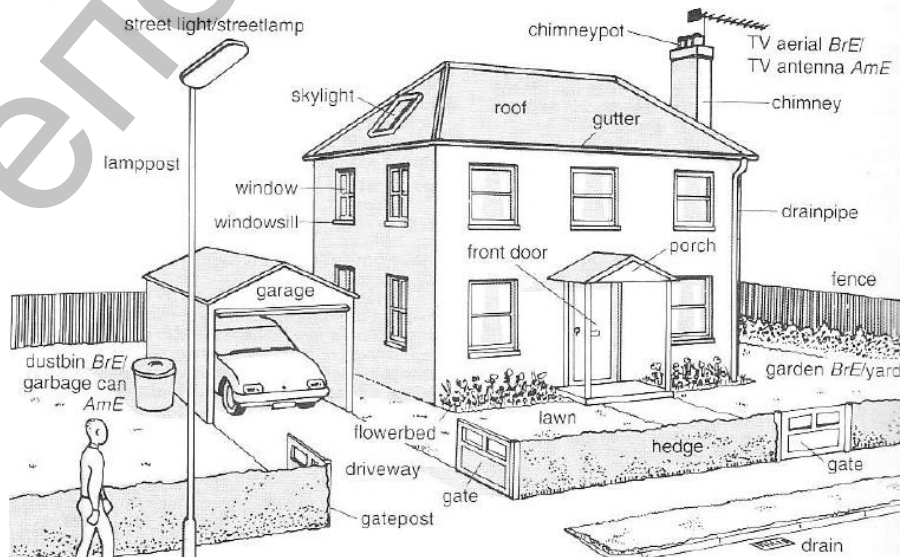


14

15

16

Exercise 5. Name all the parts of the house properly.

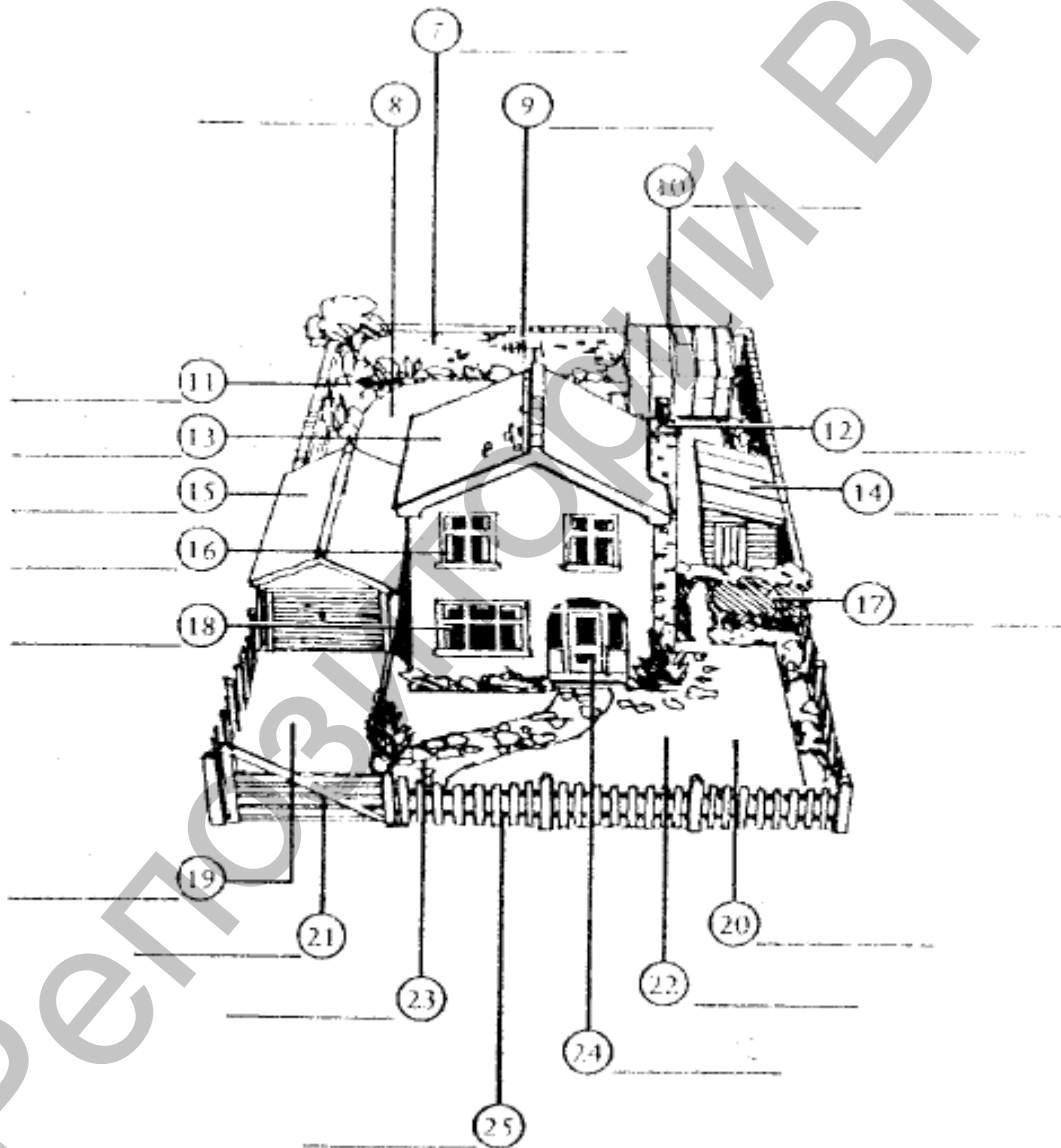


Exercise 6. Study the picture and identify the things outside the house 7-25. Choose from the list:

aerial back garden bedroom window chimney driveway fence
 flower beds front door front garden garage gate greenhouse
 ground floor window hedge lawn path roof shed wall

What materials were used for the following:

the fence; the garage; the gate; the greenhouse; the roof; the wall; the windows?



Exercise 7. Study the picture and identify the parts of the house.



Exercise 8. Decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each space.

A house in the country

The house is situated among beautiful (1)..., two miles from the nearest village, surrounded by (2)... . On a (3)... a short distance from the house is a (4)..., and a small (5)... flows past the end of the garden, which also contains a small (6)... . The name of the house, Rose Cottage, is on the garden (7)..., from which a (8)... leads to the (9)... door.

On the (10)... floor there is a large (11)... room, a dining room, a kitchen, and (12)... and toilet. (13)... there are three bedrooms. There is also a garage next to the house. The village has a post (14)..., a small shop and a pub, and there is a railway (15)... three miles away.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|----------|----------|
| 1) A view | B scenery | C sights | D looks |
| 2) A grass | B flats | C earth | D fields |
| 3) A mountain | B peak | C hill | D summit |
| 4) A wood | B greenery | C jungle | D forest |
| 5) A river | B channel | C stream | D canal |

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| 6) A sea | B bath | C water | D pond |
| 7) A gate | B door | C opening | D entrance |
| 8) A road | B path | C way | D pavement |
| 9) A forward | B front | C first | D further |
| 10) A bottom | B back | C ground | D earth |
| 11) A lounge | B seating | C saloon | D living |
| 12) A bathroom | B bath | C basin | D washing |
| 13) A Over | B Up | C Upstairs | D Higher |
| 14) A shop | B centre | C place | D office |
| 15) A station | B stop | C post | D base |

Exercise 9. a) Match the type of room with its definition. Combine two parts into full sentences.

Model: A utility room is a kind of room that is used for

A utility room is a room where you

A utility room, that's where you

●attic:	-a room in which an artist, photographer, or musician works
●basement:	-a room used for studying, reading, or writing
●cellar:	-a room with a bath, shower, washbasin and sometimes a toilet
●sitting-room:	-a bedroom and living-room all in one
●dining-room:	-a room where children sleep and play
●bedroom:	-a room where meals are eaten
●children's room:	-a room below ground level, has windows, used for working, living
●kitchen:	-a room in the roof space of the house
●bathroom:	-a room below ground level, has no windows, used for storage
●entrance hall:	-a room where people sit and relax
●study:	-a room used for sleeping
●lounge:	-a room equipped for preparing and cooking food
●studio:	-an entry area to other rooms in the house
●pantry:	-a living-room in a private house
●bedsit:	-a large cupboard or a small room in which food is kept

b) Make up descriptions of three rooms and let your group mates guess their names:

Model: A room where you make a fire to heat it.

A room where you sit and read or watch TV.

Exercise 10. a) All the verbs *to inhabit; to occupy; to settle; to lodge; to reside; to squat; to stay; to dwell* can be used instead of 'to live'. Match the words with their definitions:

1. to start to live in a place (after moving from some other place)
2. (of large group of people or animals) to live in a country or area
3. to live in a place for a while
4. (formal) to have one's home in a place
5. to be in (a house or room)
6. (literary or old use) to live in a place
7. to stay in someone else's home in exchange for paying rent
8. to live in an unused building without permission and without paying rent

b) Use the necessary words from the exercise above to complete the following sentences.

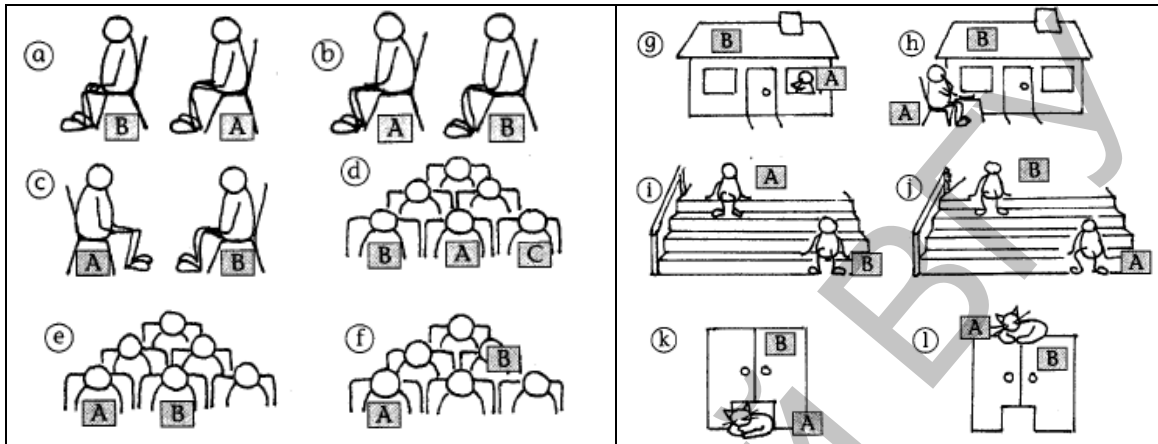
- a) When Clare was a student at university she ... with two old ladies for a year. The rent was very reasonable.
- b) If you come to Boston for a few days, you can ... with us. We have plenty of space.
- c) The Tuaregs... parts of Northern Africa.
- d) The homeless couple broke into the empty house and ... there for six months. Then the owner forced them to leave.
- e) After the war, the Van Dongs left Vietnam and eventually ... in Bordeaux.
- f) That house doesn't seem to be There are no curtains in the windows, and I've never seen anyone go in or out.

Exercise 11. Look at the verbs in block letters in the following sentences. Then complete them using nouns formed from these verbs:

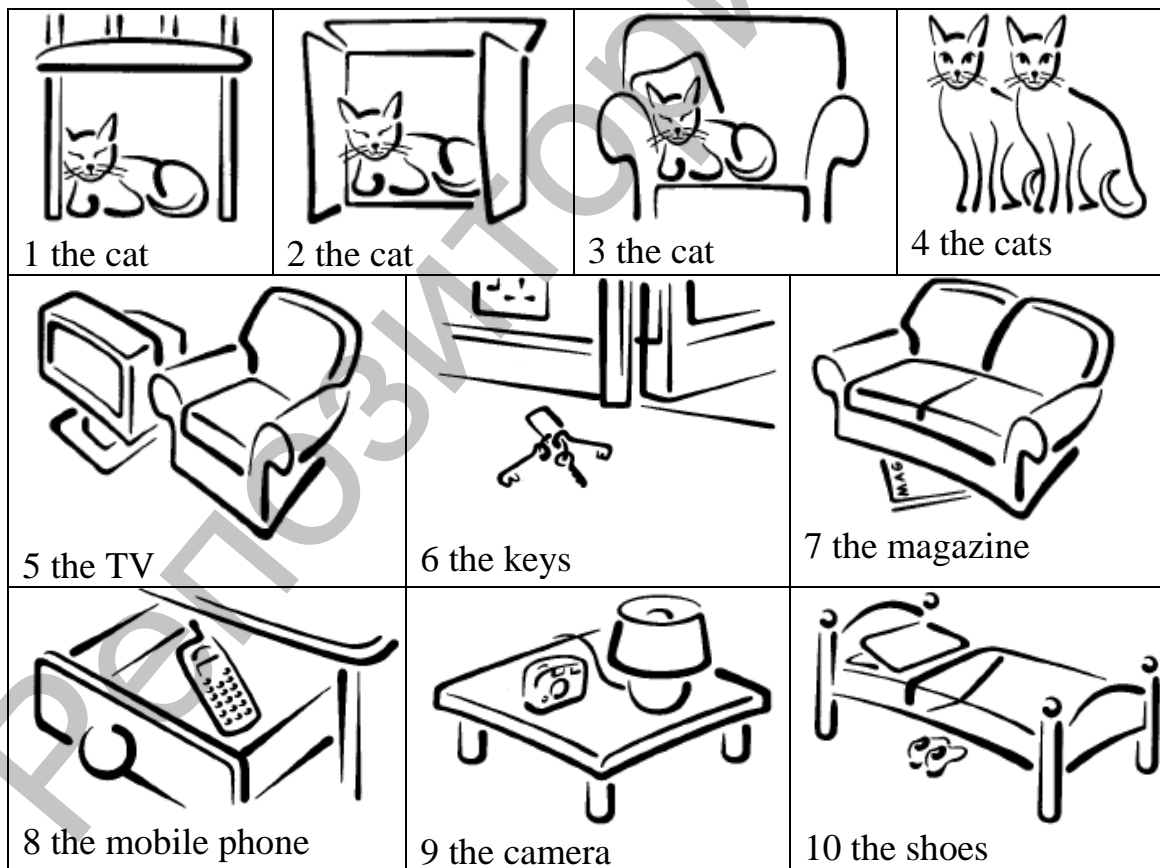
- a) A person who **lodges** with a family is their... .
- b) The large home which a rich family **resides** in is their... .
- c) The person who **occupies** a home, even if for a short time, is the
- d) The place where a person **lodges**, usually for a short period, is called his or her ... in formal English, or digs in informal British English.
- e) People who **squat** in empty houses without the owners' permission are called
- f) A place where a group of people decide to **settle**, for example in a jungle or uninhabited area, is called a... .
- g) The people who **inhabit** a country or city are called its... .
- h) People who went to a newly developed part of a country to **settle** there were often called... .

Prepositions

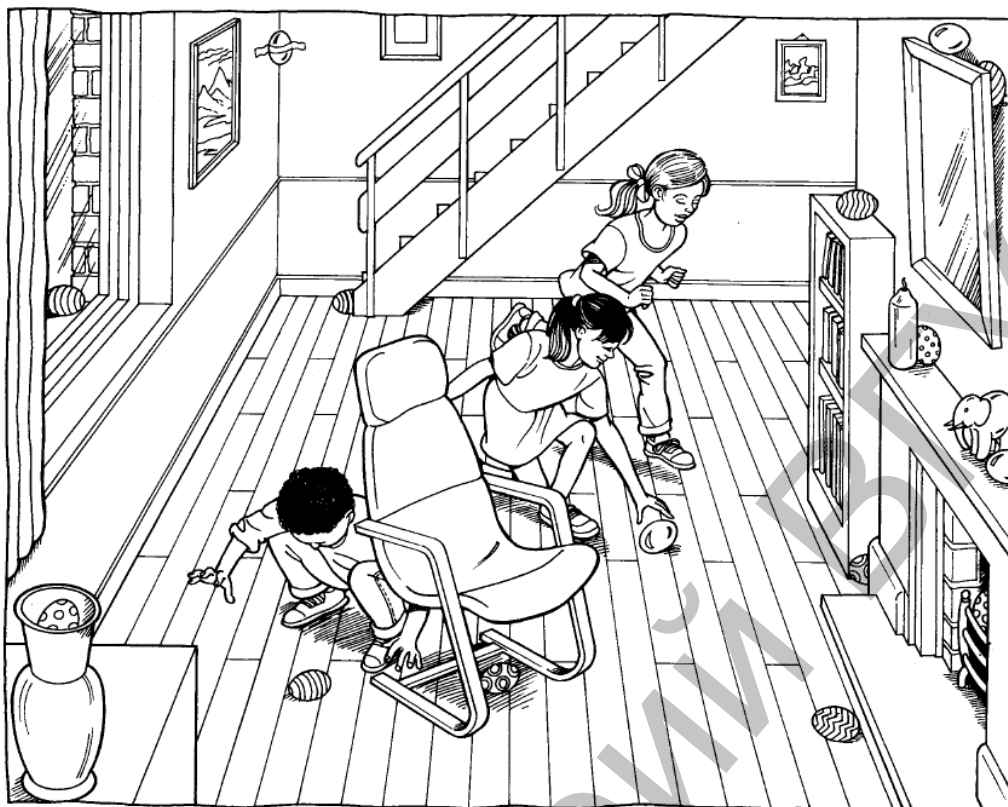
Exercise 12. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences a – l. Use the model “A isB”.



Exercise 13. Say where the objects in the pictures 1-10 are situated.



Exercise 14. There are fifteen Easter eggs in this picture. Where are they? Use different prepositions, *there is/are* construction and write a sentence to describe the position of each egg.



Exercise 15. a) Look around you now. Who / What is:

- above the teacher's desk?
- on top of the teacher's desk?
- behind you?
- between you and the door?
- sitting next to you?
- opposite the window?
- outside the door?
- under your bag?
- below your classroom?
- inside your purse / wallet?
- sitting near you?
- in front of you?

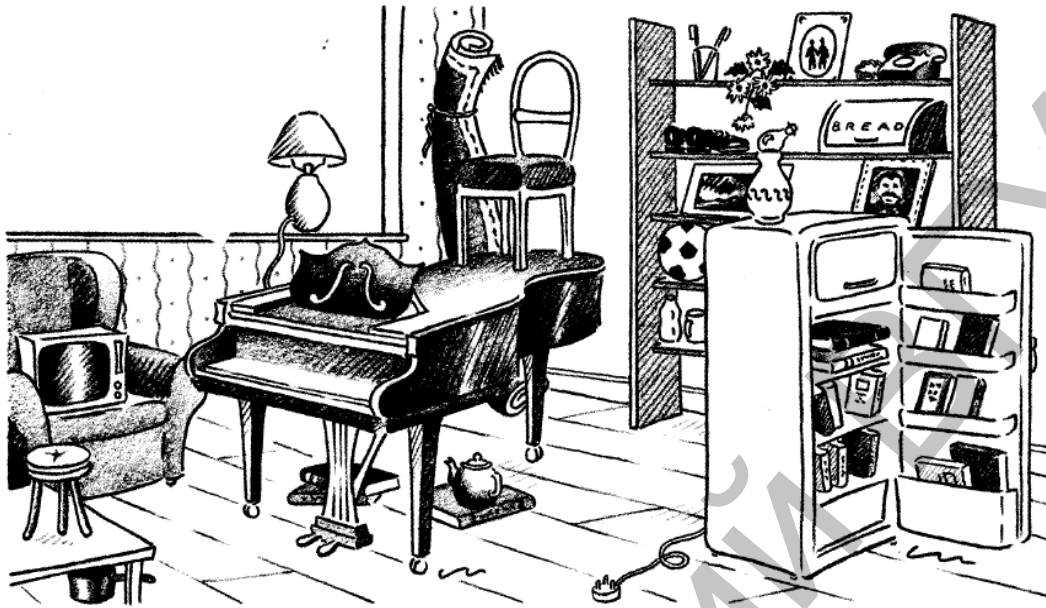
b) Ask your group mates the same questions.

Exercise 16. Insert the necessary prepositions.

A friend of mine got a very comfortable flat last month. It's _____ the second floor _____ a new block of flats. I got a letter from my friend with several pictures of her flat. _____ one of the pictures you can see her family sitting _____ the table _____ the living-room. Ann is sitting with her husband and two sons. They are watching TV. It's _____ the corner _____ the window. There is a piano _____ the left _____ the table and a small table with a telephone _____ it _____ the right. You can see a lovely carpet _____ the middle _____ the room and some pictures _____ the wall _____ the piano. The family is fond of reading books and there are plenty of them _____ the bookcase and _____ the shelves.

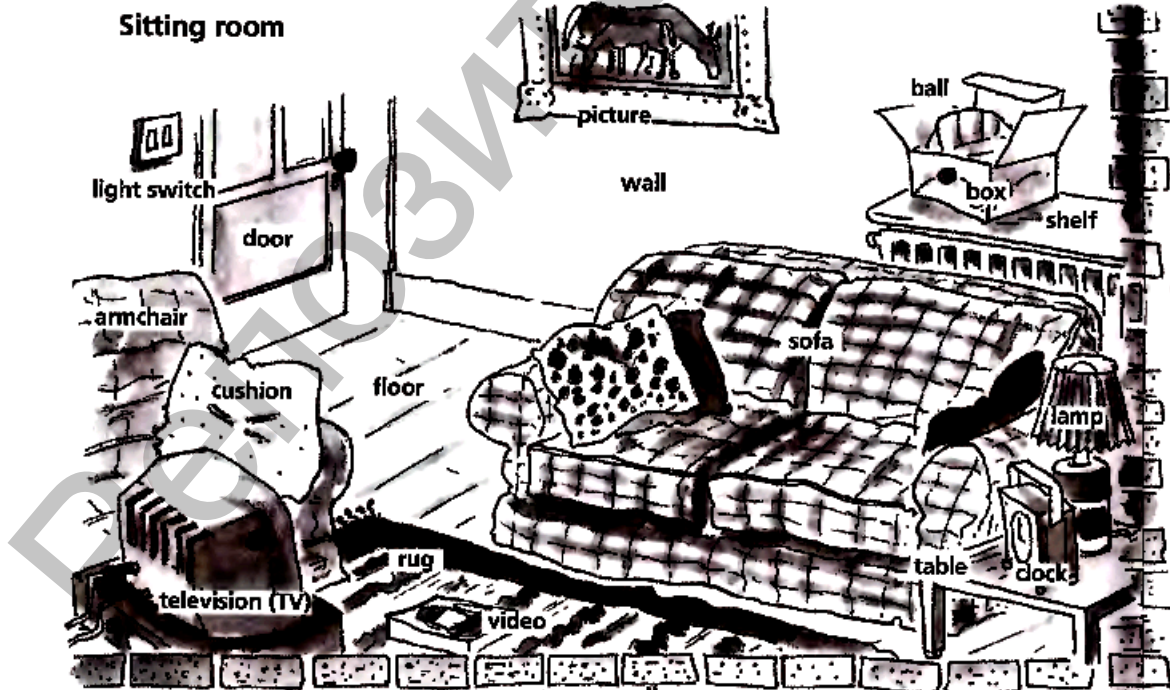
Exercise 17. Look at the picture and find the mistakes.

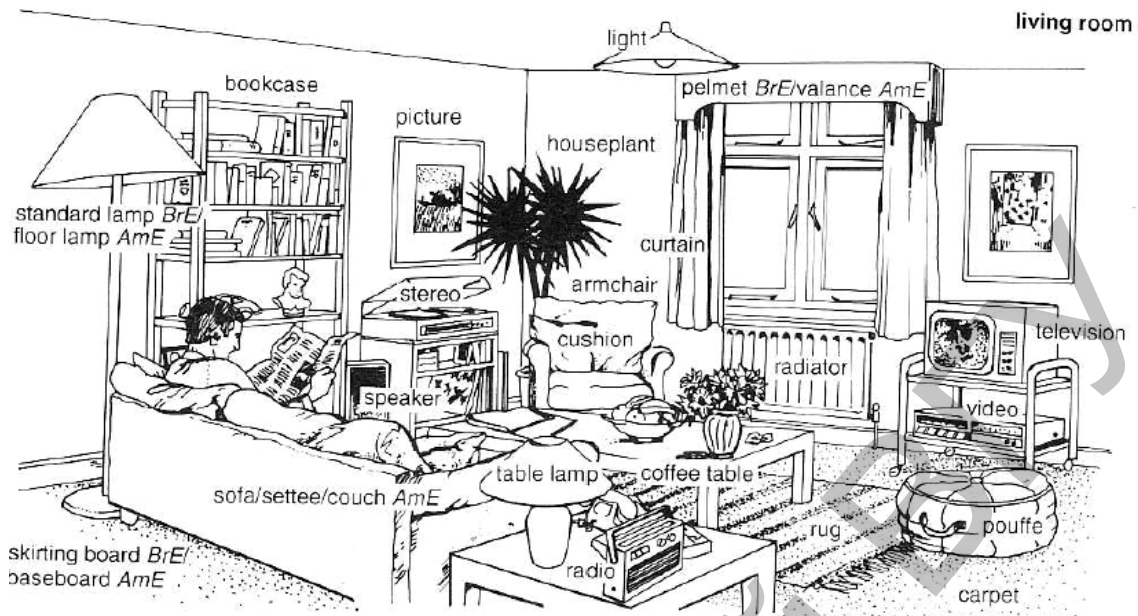
Model: mistake 1 – There is a chair on the piano.



Sitting-room

Exercise 18. Say where different things are located in the sitting room.





Exercise 19. Write the name of each numbered thing in the picture and comment on their position.

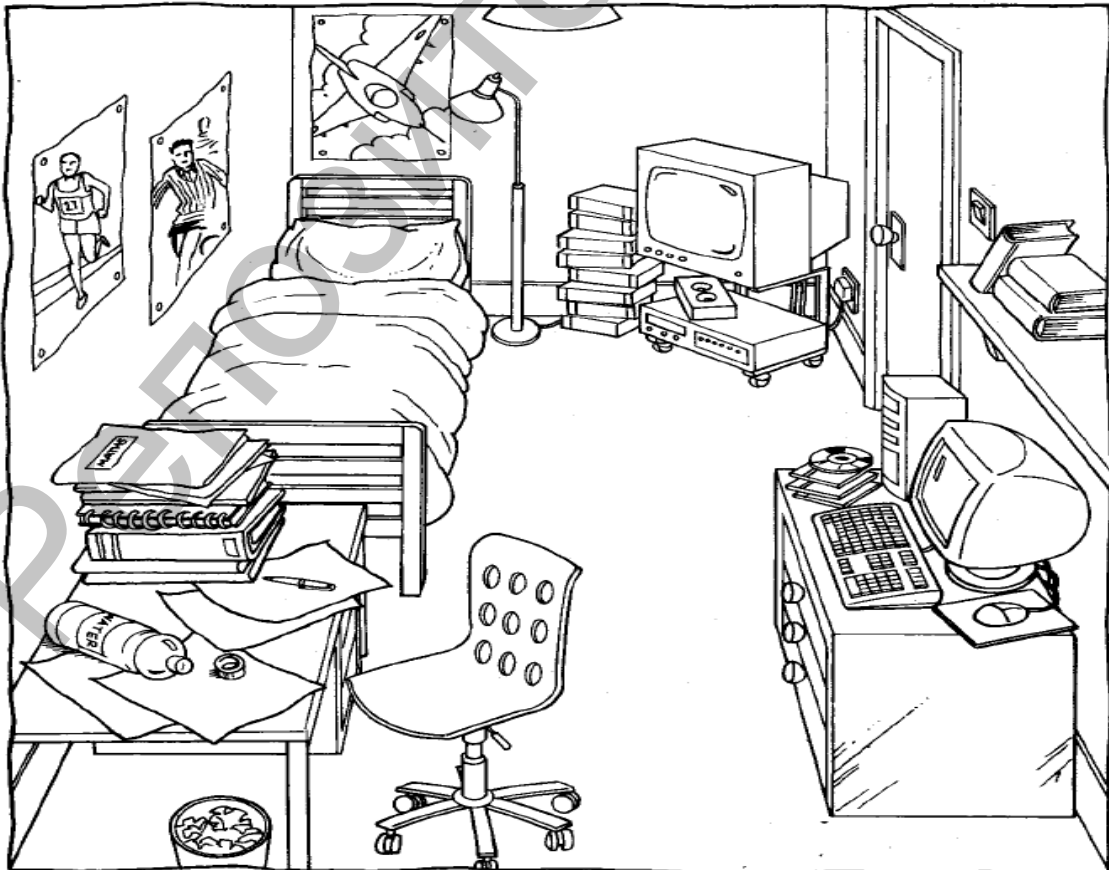


Bedroom

Exercise 20. Say where different things are located in the bedroom.

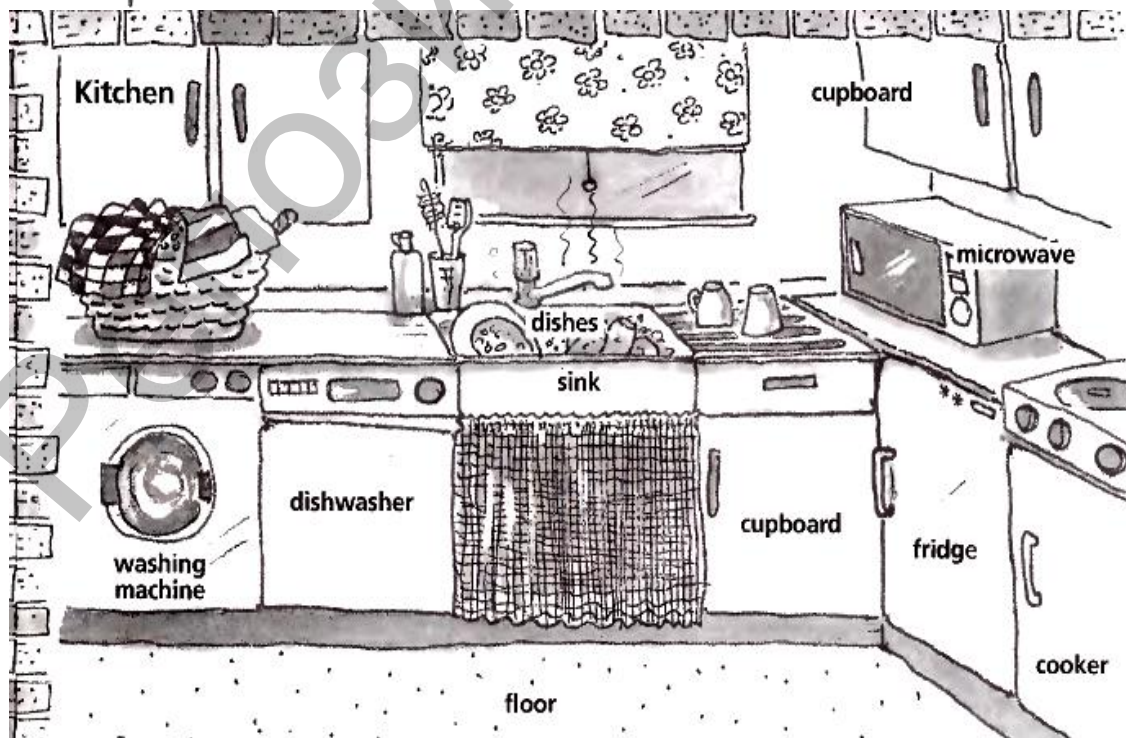
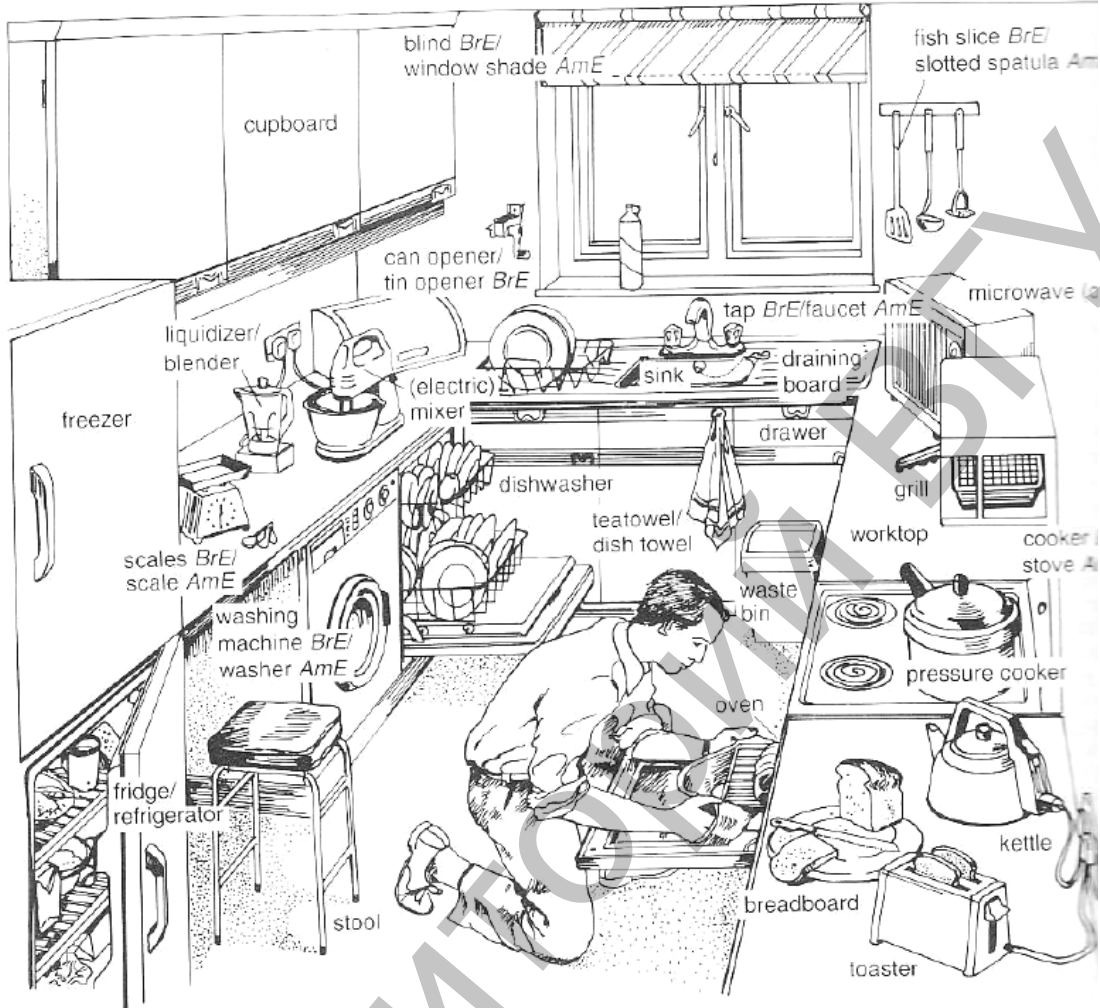


Exercise 21. Comment on the position of the things in Mike's (19 years) bedroom.



Kitchen

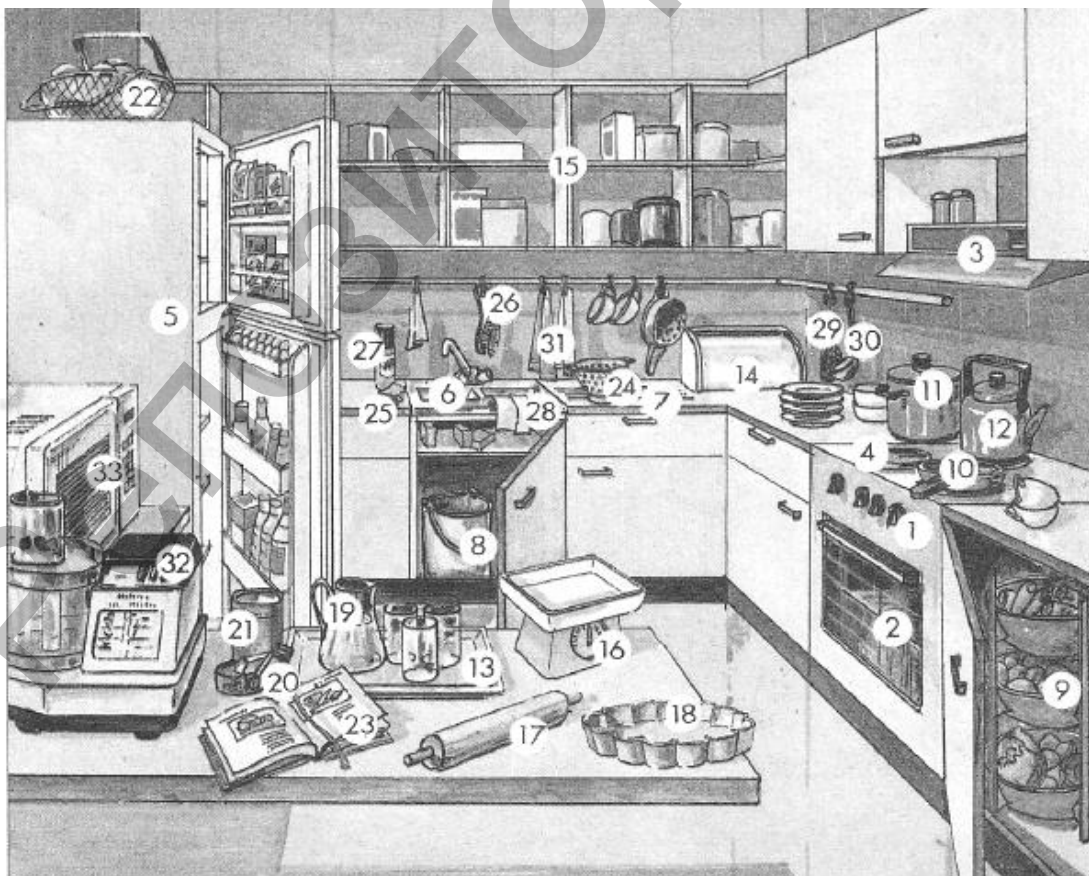
Exercise 22. Say where different things are located in the kitchens.



Exercise 23. Write the name of each numbered thing in the picture, and write what it's made of. Model: 1. A spoon is made of steel or silver.



Exercise 24. Write the name of as many things in the picture as it is possible and comment on their position.



Exercise 25. Write down:

- three things in the kitchen you can turn on/off.
- three things in the kitchen you can wash
- two things in the kitchen you can sit on
- two things in the kitchen you can use to boil water

Exercise 26. You are in the kitchen. Where do you usually put:

- a packet of spaghetti?
- milk?
- meat that you are going to cook?
- dirty clothes?
- dirty cups and saucers?
- clean cups and saucers?
- frozen food that you want to keep?
- water you are going to use for making tea?

Exercise 27. Here are some words you may find in the kitchen but the letters are jumbled. What are they?

skin	teklet	acepasnu	apt	rfko
veon	digref	reascu	rokoec	shadriswhe

Exercise 28. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

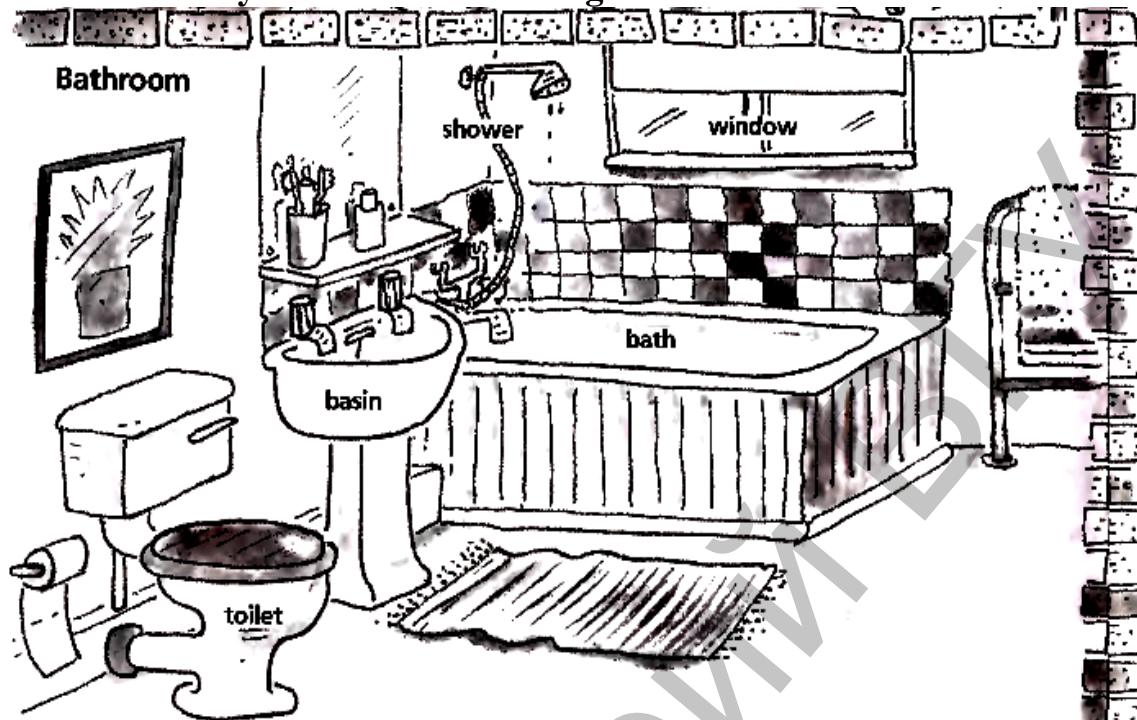
1. Shall I put the plates ... the cupboard?
2. I took the bacon ... of the fridge, made a sandwich, then put the rest of it ... in the fridge.
3. I like to sit in the same place – ... the chair near the window.
4. You normally cook the meat ... the oven for 45 minutes.
5. I took a few things ... of the cupboard and put them ... the table.

Exercise 29. You are moving to a new flat. You can afford to buy only three things first. What would you choose, and why?

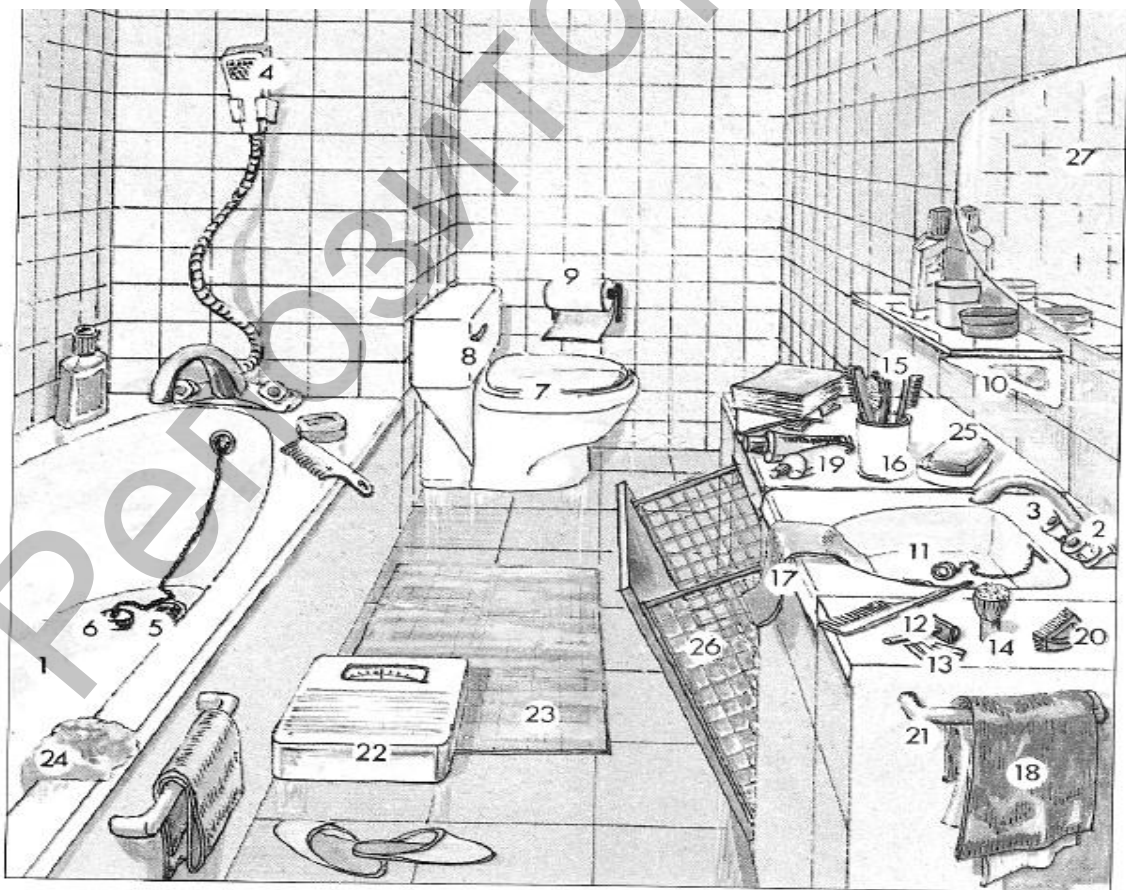
Model: I would choose a cooker – I can't eat cold food all the time.

Bathroom

Exercise 30. Say where different things are located in the bathroom.

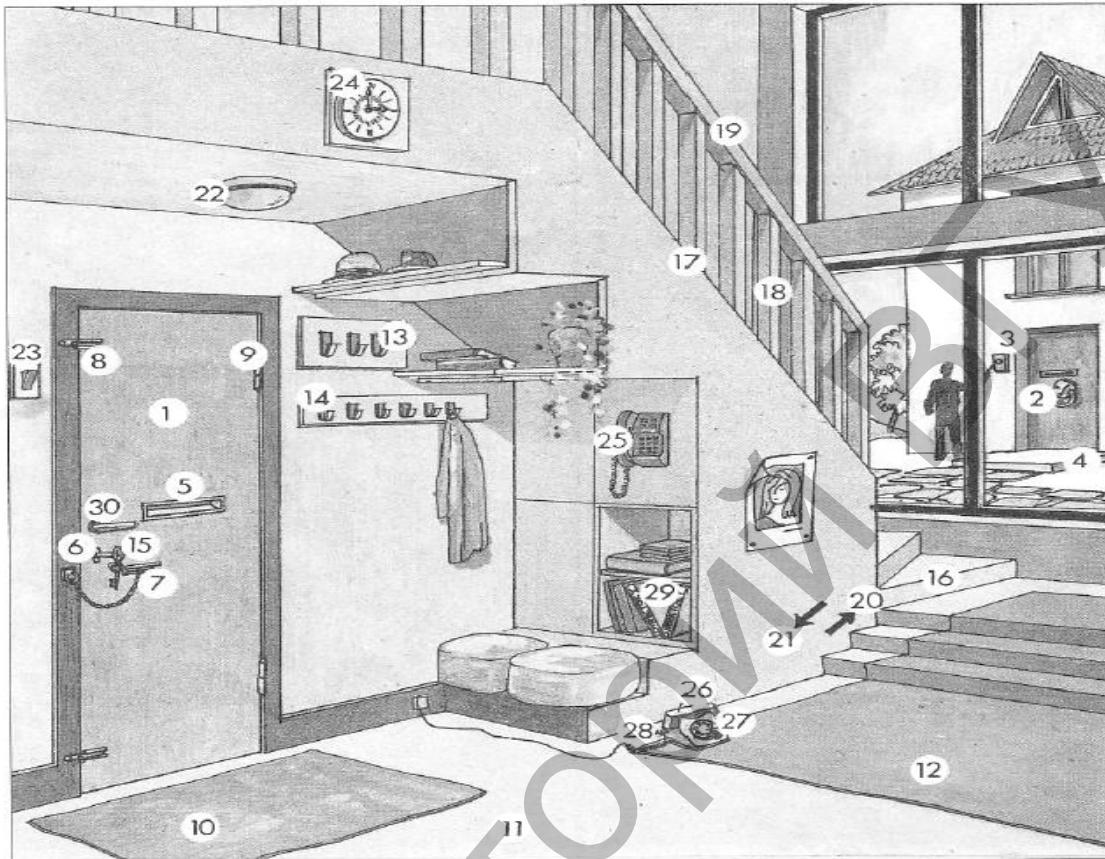


Exercise 31. Write the name of each numbered thing in the picture and comment on their position.



Entrance Hall

Exercise 32. Write the name of each numbered thing in the picture and comment on their position.



Exercise 33. Look at the picture of the living-room for two minutes, then hide it and agree or disagree with the following statements. Test your memory.



1. In the middle of the room there is a big table.
2. The table is laid for dinner.
3. At the table there are two armchairs.
4. The armchairs are very comfortable with tall backs.
5. On the right there is a fireplace.
6. On the mantelpiece there is a clock.
7. Just opposite the fireplace there is a sofa.
8. There are four cushions on the sofa.
9. The sofa is small and comfortable.
10. In the foreground we can see a desk.
11. In the far left corner there is a standard lamp.
12. The walls are covered with beautiful carpets.

Exercise 34. Distribute the objects according to the rooms you can find them in.

kitchen	living-room	bedroom	bathroom	entrance hall	study

table, desk, sofa, stool, armchair, sideboard, wall-units, coffee table, bookcase, bookshelf, bed, bedside table, wardrobe, bureau, mirror, chest of drawers, carpet, coat rack, fridge, freezer, chandelier, standard lamp, lampshade, washbasin, sink, washing machine, stereo system, fireplace, sheet, pillow, blanket, cushion, picture, curtain, vase, vacuum cleaner, mixer, toaster, microwave oven, dishwasher, stove, iron, toilet pan, rug.

Exercise 35. Write down the names of the objects in the pictures, watch your spelling.

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16.
--	---

Exercise 36. Complete each sentence with a word below.

carpet curtains cushion drawer pillow radiator sofa socket

- a) Is that chair comfortable, or would you like to use a.....?
- b) Mark couldn't use his computer as there wasn't a.....in the room.
- c) This house has central heating, and there's a.....in every room.
- d) I was so tired that I fell asleep as soon as my head touched the..... .
- e) Could you draw the? Someone is staring through the window.
- f) My bedroom has a fitted which covers the whole floor.
- g) The knives and forks are in the second..... ..on the left.
- h) Come over here and sit next to me on the..... .

Exercise 37. Each sentence contains an inappropriate word or phrase. Underline this word, and then replace it with a word or phrase below.

bookcase chimney fence floor gate window step towel

1. Unfortunately the ball hit the house and broke a glass.
2. I washed my hands in the bathroom and dried them with a cloth.
3. There was a small wooden door leading into the field.
4. As I sat down at the kitchen table, I knocked my cup onto the ground.
5. In the corner of Joe's room was a small library for his books.
6. All round the garden there was a high wooden wall.
7. On the roof-tops Tina could see a tall fireplace pouring out smoke.
8. The floor of the kitchen is a bit lower, so mind the stairs.

Exercise 38. Complete the sentences with a compound word formed from two words below. One word is used twice.

arm	bin	flower	stairs
ash	dish	hole	tray
basin	down	key	wash
bed	dust	room	washer
case	book		

1. It's very cold in my , and I find it hard to sleep.
2. Sarah spent all afternoon sitting in a large in front of the TV.
3. I left my socks soaking in the..... in the bathroom.
4. Do you think you could put all your rubbish outside in the.....?
5. There's a beautiful full of roses right outside my window.
6. Don't worry about the washing-up. We'll put everything in the
7. I can't open the front door. Something is stuck in the..... .
8. If you really insist on smoking, please use this
9. Can you come.....? There's someone at the door for you.
10. In this.....are the dictionaries and an encyclopedia.

Exercise 39. Fill in the gaps with suitable words.

The Clarks live in a tiny a..... on the top f..... of a b..... of flats in the city centre. It has c..... h..... so it is very warm in winter. It does not have a..... c..... because the summers are not very hot. They were lucky to find it because a..... is very scarce in the city and it's easier to find a flat in a new estate on the o..... of the city or in the s..... .

Their dream is to m..... to the country and live in an old c..... in a little v..... .

Where they live now, their-next door n..... are always c..... about the noise when Jane plays the piano, and they haven't got room for all things: there aren't enough s..... in the l.....for all the children's books and the w..... in the bedroom is not big enough for all Tom's clothes.

But if they find a place in the country, they will have to buy it and pay the m..... every month – more than the r..... they pay to their l..... at the moment. Unfortunately, the Clarks can't afford buying a cottage now.

Exercise 40. Underline the most suitable word.

1. As you can see, the garden has two ornamental iron doors/ gates and there is a stone path/pavement leading to the house.
2. This is the front entry/entrance, but there is another door at the edge/side of the house.
3. All the rooms have covered/fitted carpets.
4. All the cupboards/wardrobes in the kitchen and the bookshelves/ library in the living room are included in the price.
5. There is a beautiful stone chimney/fireplace in the living room, and there are sinks/washbasins in all the bedrooms.
6. At the top of the stairs/steps there is a coloured/stained glass window.
7. The bathroom has a shower/washer and modern mixer pipes/ taps.
8. At the top of the house there is a/an attic/cellar and the garden contains a glasshouse/greenhouse and a garden hut/shed.
9. There is a wooden fence/wall on one side of the garden, and a bush/hedge on the other.
10. This is a fine single/detached house in a quiet neighbourhood/suburb.
11. Laura was sitting beside the fire in a comfortable armchair/sofa.
12. We drove out of the village along a winding lane/path.
13. Steve redecorated his room with flowery posters/wallpaper.
14. Put the meat in the cooker/oven for two hours.
15. Peter was in the garden mowing the flowers/lawn.
16. We used to keep the coal downstairs in the cave/cellar.
17. Why don't you put the car in the car park/parking?
18. Kate lives in a flat on the first floor/storey.
19. Put your wet socks on the central heating/radiator to dry.
20. Go and get the lawnmower. The grass is/are very long.

21. I like the painting but I don't like the frame/surrounding.
22. Mary has a lot of small ornaments on her window shelf/sill.
23. There's someone at/on the door. Can you see who it is?
24. Will you be at home/at house later this evening?
25. Paul's room is at the top of the stairs/steps opposite the bathroom.
26. Can you remember to clean the washbasin/sink in the bathroom?
27. The rooms downstairs are so low I can touch the roof/ceiling.
28. Tony is a keen cooker/cook and always uses an electric cooker/cook.
29. You'll find plates in the cupboard/wardrobe next to the fridge.
30. Ann was sitting at/to her desk, but Chris was sitting in/on an armchair.
31. I won't be long. I'm just going upstairs for a bath/a bathe.
32. Lisa didn't like doing homework/housework, so she paid a cleaner.
33. Under the house there's a cave/cellar where we keep our old things.

Exercise 41. Match the words with suitable explanations (1-23).

curtains	drive	blanket	bunk	shelf	central heating
dishwasher	stool	doormat	landing	rug	door knocker
letterbox	settee/sofa	shutters	ceiling	chimney	pillow
kennel	blind	cushion	roof	rubbish	

1. Rectangular hole in the front door.....
2. Long narrow rectangular piece of wood or metal fixed to the wall.....
3. Short road between the street and a house or its garage....
4. Use this if you want someone to open the front door
5. Put the dirty dishes in this
6. This system makes the house warm.....
7. A small carpet.....
8. More than one person can sit on this.....
9. An area at the top of some stairs
10. Wipe your feet on this before you enter the house.....
11. Pull these to cover the windows.....
12. Small seat without back or arms.....
13. Put this over you if you are cold in bed.....
14. Put this behind your back if you are sitting uncomfortably.....
15. These protect your windows outside and can be closed in bad weather...
16. This is the top of the room.....
17. This is a bed with others above it.....
18. This is the top of the house.....
19. Put this under your head when you go to sleep.....
20. Close these to keep the sunlight out of your room.....
21. This is anything you throw away in the dustbin.....
22. This is home for your pet dog.....
23. The smoke goes up this from the fireplace.....

Exercise 42. Explain the differences between the following items:

- a standard lamp, a lamp, a wall lamp and a chandelier
- a pillow, a puff and a cushion
- a stool, a chair and an armchair
- a desk, a dining table, a bedside table and a coffee table
- a sink and a washbasin
- a washing machine and a dishwasher
- a bedspread, a sheet and a blanket
- a sideboard, a wardrobe and a cupboard
- an alarm-clock, a clock and a watch
- a carpet, a rug and parquet
- a hedge, a wall and a fence

Exercise 43. Complete each sentence with the words *home*, *house* or a word formed from one of these words.

- a) The old couple decided to live in an old people's
- b) Jane can't stand washing and ironing and other
- c) Graham bought a terraced.....in a quiet city street.
- d) Many..... people sleep on the streets of London.
- e) Jack was unable to look after his children so he employed a
- f) I come from Newcastle. It's my..... town, you could say.
- g) Paul used to live on the river on aboat.
- h) When I went to boarding school I felt very.....sick at first.
- i) Our first home was on the.....estate on Oakwood Hill.
- j) Pour yourself a drink and make yourself at.....

Exercise 44. Complete each part of the sentence (a-h) with one of the endings (1-8).

- a) Please sit down and make yourself
 - b) Many of our language students share
 - c) I like Do-It-Yourself, but I've decided to have
 - d) Alan seems to have so many clothes that he can never find
 - e) If you can't find the house you can always ask for
 - f) Susan lives on the tenth floor of
 - g) If you're short of money you can buy
 - h) As we live in a semi-detached house, we hear
- 1 room for all of them in the wardrobe.
 - 2 a block of flats on the south side of the city.
 - 3 directions at the bus-station.
 - 4 at home, while I make some tea.
 - 5 accommodation in the villages nearby.
 - 6 the decorating done by a local firm.
 - 7 a lot of noise through the wall from the family next door.
 - 8 furniture from the street market near the cathedral.

Exercise 45. Decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each space.

Moving in

The entrance to the flat was at the (1)...of the house. Jane had to walk along a (2)...across the lawn and past a (3)...full of gardening equipment. Inside the back door there was a flight of (4)...and then another door on the (5)... . It was a (6)...flat with a bedroom, living room, kitchen and bathroom. There was not a lot of (7)...but certainly enough for a student like Jane. There was a/an (8)...in the living room with an electric fire, and the kitchen had a small (9)...and a fridge. The bathroom did not have a bath, only a (10)...and a basin, but Jane didn't mind. She was thinking about other problems. There wasn't a washing (11)..., and there was no (12)...heating. It was raining outside, and the flat felt damp and chilly. On the bed there were some (13)...and a duvet, but no (14)... . It was lucky that Jane had brought a sleeping bag. As she was wondering what to do next, there was a knock (15)...the door.

- | | | | | |
|-----|----------------|-----------------|--------------|------------|
| 1) | A side | B inside | C beginning | D garden |
| 2) | A road | B way | C path | D stairs |
| 3) | A room | B shed | C cellar | D floor |
| 4) | A ladder | B upstairs | C rooms | D stairs |
| 5) | A roof | B landing | C balcony | D bottom |
| 6) | A multi-storey | B semi-detached | C furnished | D cottage |
| 7) | A furniture | B rent | C neighbours | D housing |
| 8) | A oven | B fireplace | C cooker | D cooking |
| 9) | A cook | B cookery | C cooker | D cooking |
| 10) | A waterfall | B shower | C splash | D sink |
| 11) | A machine | B up | C room | D powder |
| 12) | A central | B much | C radiator | D good |
| 13) | A wrappings | B rugs | C carpets | D blankets |
| 14) | A whites | B sheets | C spreads | D cloths |
| 15) | A for | B behind | C to | D at |

Exercise 46. Read the three extracts below. What kind of building does each one describe? Which comes from: a brochure for holiday homes?; a letter?; a story?

(a)...finally found somewhere to live! It's on the fifth floor of this lovely old apartment block, right in the city centre. It's very spacious and there's lots of light, but the best thing is that it has a wonderful view of the river. If you look out you can actually see the parliament building...

(b) ...this three-storey house with a charming balcony is situated in a small village on the west coast of the island.

Set in its own private garden with a large swimming pool, it has 6 bedrooms, 3 bathrooms, a modern kitchen and an attractive living-room.

There are tennis courts within a few minutes' drive, and bars and supermarkets nearby.

(c)... the address was in the suburbs, at the end of a quiet street. Sylvia went up the path, unlocked the front door, and walked in. Inside, the rooms were small and rather dark. As she looked round the living room, she noticed some wood next to the fireplace and the vase of fresh flowers by the window. The old-fashioned furniture was simple but elegant and there were colourful rugs on the wooden floor. At the back of the house there was a small, sunny courtyard with some plants in pots. Sylvia smiled. It was perfect.

Exercise 47. a) Use a dictionary and read the following advertisements for homes taken from a British estate agent's publicity. Assuming you had the money, which home, if any, would you want to look at and why?

1. Spacious Victorian terraced house enjoying views across the city. Handy for local shops, buses, schools, etc. Porch, entrance hall, 2 impressive reception rooms, kitchen / breakfast room, bathroom with shower, 3 bedrooms, gas, central heating, small, but delightful garden.
2. Southern outskirts city: a double-fronted pre-war semi-detached 3 bed roomed house in a quiet tree-lined road. Convenient for local shops and city buses. Period hall, good-sized lounge, dining room, utility room / storeroom, electric storage heaters, double-glazing, charming mature garden, garage.
3. A purpose-built upper floor flat located in one of the city's prime residential areas, some 10 minutes' walk from the city centre and railway station. Close to local shops and canal path walks. Commanding superb views over the city and surrounding hills. Gas, central heating, hall, 6m x 2m living room, bathroom, 2 double bedrooms with wardrobes, garage.
4. A very well-proportioned detached bungalow, not far from the city centre, containing a luxury kitchen, an impressive open-plan living room with a fireplace, 4 double bedrooms, and 2 bathrooms. Gas, central heating, fair decorative order throughout, large secluded garden, and double garage.

b) The following adjectives are all taken from the advertisements above. Put them in the table according to whether their meanings relate to size, distance, age or quality.

spacious	fair	purpose-built	good-sized
prime	superb	double-fronted	pre-war
close	period	impressive	luxury
open-plan	mature	well-proportioned	not far
secluded	handy	convenient	charming

Size	Distance	Age	Quality

Exercise 48. Highlight the meanings of the proverbs and make up sentences of your own.

1. East or West - home is best.
2. There is no place like home.
3. People who live in glass houses should never throw stones.
4. My home is my castle.
5. Men make houses, women make homes.

Exercise 49. Translate into English.

1. Мы переехали в отдельный дом с большим садом, кирпичным гаражом, стеклянной теплицей, газоном перед домом и забором вокруг него.
2. Мало людей в Европе живут в многоквартирных домах, они предпочитают владеть домом в пригороде.
3. Обычно в английских домах есть небольшая уютная прихожая, просторная кухня, светлая столовая, спальня, ванная комната и туалет, кладовка, чердак и подвальное помещение.
4. Мы используем нашу гостиную как рабочий кабинет. Окна гостиной выходят на юг, и здесь всегда солнечно.
5. Детская комната очень хорошо и современно обставлена. На полу небольшой коврик, а обои на стенах розового цвета.
6. В следующем месяце мы собираемся побелить потолок, поклеить обои, купить новые яркие занавески и поменять ковровое покрытие.
7. Я обожаю жить в городе, потому что у нас есть все современные удобства: центральное отопление, холодная и горячая вода, телефон, лифт и даже мусоропровод.
8. Все окна нашей 2х-комнатной квартиры выходят на тихий парк. Здесь никогда не бывает шумно.
9. В углу нашей кухни находится газовая плита, справа от нее – холодильник с микроволновой печью на нем, у окна – кухонный стол и 4 стула, над раковиной находятся шкафчики для посуды, а между раковиной и морозильником имеется посудомоечная машина.
10. Наша зальная комната очень милая. В центре стоит журнальный столик, вдоль стены – новая стенка, напротив стенки – диван и два кресла. Телевизор и стереосистема находятся на деревянной тумбочке, а за ней – батарея.

Reading

Reading 1. Our Flat.

Exercise 1. Read the text and draw a plan of this flat.

I live in a new nine-storeyed block of flats in Pushkin street. Our house is of modern design. There's a big grocery on the ground floor and it's very convenient to do everyday shopping. In front of the house there is a children's playground and a small garden. We like to spend time there.

Our flat is on the third floor. It is very comfortable. We have all modern conveniences, such as central heating, electricity, gas, cold and hot running water and a telephone. There are three rooms in our flat: a living room and two bedrooms. We also have a kitchen, a bathroom, a small entrance hall and two balconies (the second floor hasn't got any).

Our living room is the largest in the flat. It is nicely furnished. Against the wall you can see a nice sideboard. In the corner there is a colour TV set. In the opposite corner there is a sofa and two armchairs. The piano is on the right. There are two pictures above the piano. Near it there is a bookcase. We are fond of books and have plenty of them at home. On the floor we have a nice thick carpet. The curtains on the window match the walls. All this makes the room cosy.

Our bedrooms are also very nice and cosy. The parents' bedroom is larger than the children's. There are two beds, a bedside table, some chairs and a wardrobe in it. There is a lovely carpet on the floor between the beds.

The children's bedroom is just across the corridor on the right. Here you can see two sofa-beds where my sister and I sleep at night and have a rest in the day-time. There is also a writing-table, two chairs and some bookshelves here. We use our bedroom as a study where we do our homework. In the corner of the room there is a small table with a tape-recorder on it. We all enjoy listening to music.

Our kitchen is rather large. There is a gas-stove, four stools, a refrigerator and a cupboard in which we keep cups, plates and all our dishes. The kitchen serves us as a dining-room. But when we receive guests or have our family celebrations we have the meals in the living-room.

The bathroom is near the kitchen. Here we keep our toilet articles, have a bath and a shower.

The entrance hall is small. There is a hall-stand and a mirror on the wall. A telephone is on a special table under the mirror.

We are happy to have such a nice flat and try to keep it clean.

Reading 2. Our Home

Exercise 1. Read the text with the help of dictionary.

The place we live in is our home, or in more official language, our residence or dwelling.

Americans call the place people stay in when they go to the country in summer a summer cottage. The English call their house in the country a country house. Usually those are detached two-storied houses with front and back gardens.

Some people live in private houses in cities but many people in large cities live in tenement houses. In the USA houses with apartments to let are called apartment houses. The people living in tenement (apartment) houses are called tenants and they pay rent. They rent a flat. The owner of the tenement house is called a landlord (landlady). A flat to let is called lodging and the people living in it are called lodgers.

A house may be one, two, three-storied and higher. In large cities there are multi-storied houses and immense blocks of flats. These are large buildings divided into a large number of flats. American high multi-storeyed buildings are called skyscrapers.

London houses have mostly 2 or 3 stories. The entrance to the house from the street is called the front door. There is always another entrance, too, leading into the house from the yard - the back door.

When we open the door we enter the hall of the house. We are on the ground floor. The Americans call it the first floor. The Russians call it the first floor, too. Inside the house, the staircase leads to the upper floors. We go upstairs to get to the upper floors or go downstairs to get to the lower floors. Speaking of a two-storied house the English, as a rule, say «upstairs» and «downstairs» and not the first and the ground floor.

The staircase consists of stairs (steps). When going upstairs or downstairs, we hold on to the handrails. The door of the flat usually opens on to the landing. The steps between two landings are called a flight of landing. In tenement houses some people put a name board on the door.

Suppose we enter a private English house. We wipe our feet on the doormat and enter the hall. The hostess takes our coat off and hangs them up on the hallstand. Then we go into the sitting-room which is the room for general use in the daytime. Besides this room, the house has a dining room, a kitchen and upstairs three bedrooms, a bathroom with a toilet in it, a utility room.

A bigger house may have more bedrooms, a nursery, a library, a study and also a lumber room, a pantry, an attic, a cellar, then a shed and a garage under the house or in the yard.

The windows of the rooms may give upon (face, overlook, look out on) the street, the garden, the road, etc. There are curtains over the windows. When night falls we draw the curtains and open them again in

the morning. We open the windows and the doors; we shut them or lock them.

When there is some furniture in the room we say that the room is furnished and when there is no furniture we say that the room is bare (unfurnished). Articles of furniture made of the same wood and modelled in the same style are called a suite of furniture.

In a sitting room you can often see a sofa or a settee and several armchairs, a small coffee table and a television (TV-set) with a video recorder. The TV-set and the video recorder are connected to the mains by a plug and socket connection. A tall standard lamp stands near the sofa. On the floor we can see a carpet. The family often gathers at the fireplace. On the top of the fireplace there is a mirror, a clock and some ornaments. Near the wall you can see a bookcase with some books in it and on the walls there are some pictures.

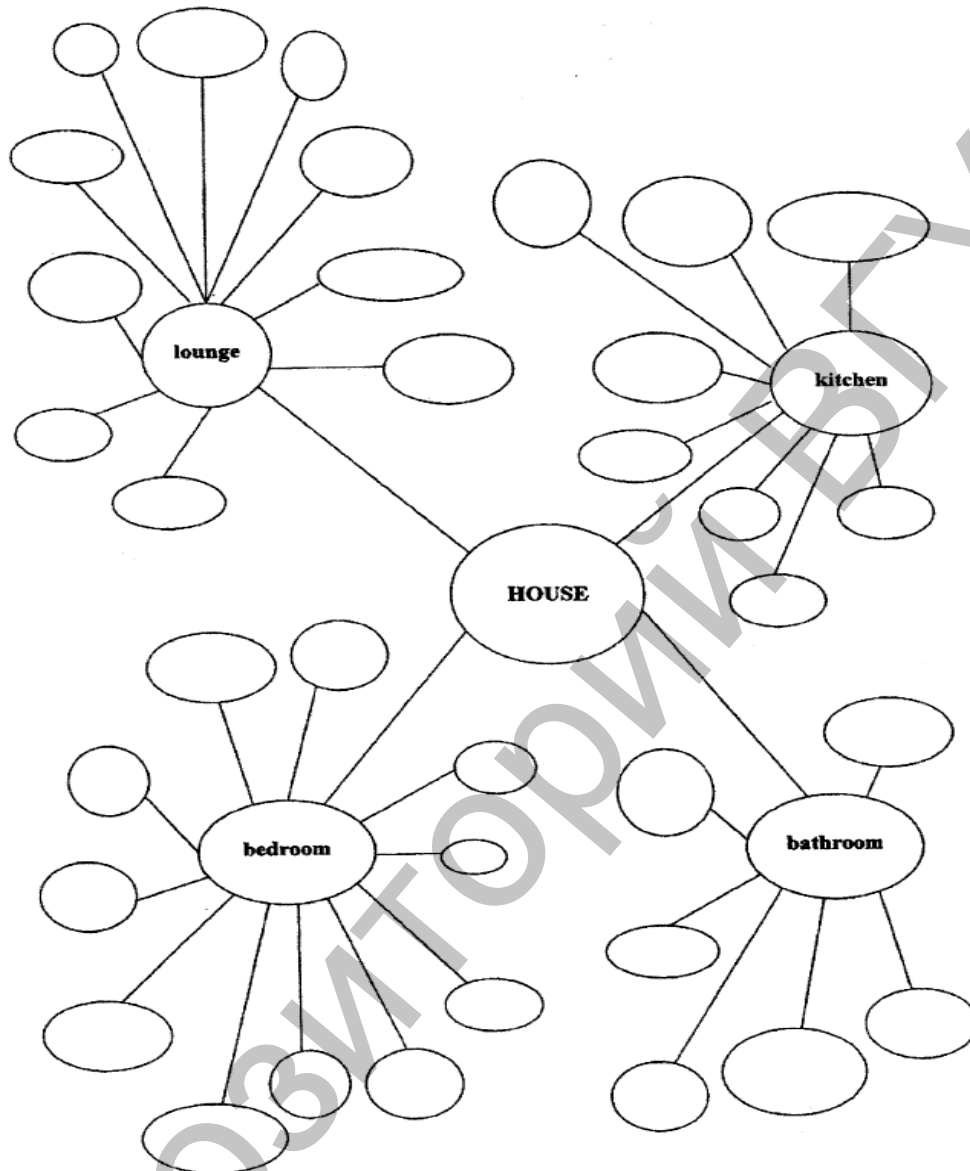
In the kitchen a cupboard contains various cooking utensils, such as pans, frying pans, a mincer, cups, plates. There is also a gas (or electric) cooker with an oven, a refrigerator (fridge) and dishwasher. A microwave oven and a toaster are very useful appliances. Over the sink there are taps for cold and hot running water. Under the sink there is a waste-basin. You can also see a kitchen table, some stools near it, and a worktop.

As a rule, there are several bedrooms in a house: children's bedroom and a parents' bedroom. In a bedroom we can see a bed, a bedside table with a lamp and a clock on it. Near the wall there is a wardrobe and a writing desk. One chair or two chairs are also necessary articles of furniture. The bedding includes a pillow with a pillow-case, sheets and a blanket.

In the bathroom near the tiled wall there is a bath with its shower. Opposite the bath you can see a toilet. Near the toilet there is a laundry-basket for dirty clothes. In the midway between the bath and the toilet there is a washbasin adjoining the wall. Next to it there are tooth brushes in special brush-holders and a piece of soap in the soap dish. Over the washbasin there is a mirror and a cabinet with shelves. On the shelves you can see tubes of tooth paste, an electric shaver, a razor, a shaving brush, some combs, a hair brush and a sponge. On the wall, near the bath, there is a towel rail with some towels on it. On the floor, near the bath, there is a bathmat.

Many private English homes have no central heating. They have fireplaces that give warmth as long as coal or firewood burns, and in autumn and winter the rooms feel rather cold. But nevertheless the English like their fireplaces.

Exercise 2. Complete the vocabulary network with the words from the text and topical vocabulary.



Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks:

1. The place we live in is
2. The English call their houses in the country
3. Most people in large cities live in ... houses.
4. The people living in tenement houses are called
5. In tenement houses some people put a ... on the door.
6. Large buildings divided into a large number of flats are called
7. The entrance to the house from the street is called
8. The door leading to the house from the yard is called
9. When we open the front (or back) door and enter the house we are on the ... floor in Britain and on the ... floor in the USA.
10. The staircase consists of

11. We go ... to get to the upper floors and we go ... to get to the lower floors.
12. When we open a door of a private English house we enter a
13. The room for general use in the daytime is called
14. The windows of the sitting-room and other rooms may ... the street, the yard, the garden and so on.
15. There are ... over the windows.
16. When there is some ... in the room we say that the room is furnished.
17. Articles of furniture made of the same wood and modelled in the same style are called
18. In the kitchen a kitchen cabinet contains various
19. Most English homes have no central ..., they have ... that give warmth as long as coal or firewood burns.

Exercise 4. Answer the questions.

- What do we call our home?
- What do the English call their houses in the country?
- In what houses do many people live in large cities?
- What are the people living in tenement called? Do they pay rent?
- What are American high multi-storeyed buildings called?
- What do we call the entrance to the house from the street / garden?
- What part of the house do you enter when you open the front door?
- What does a staircase consist of?
- What do we hold on to when we go upstairs or downstairs?
- What rooms does a private house usually consist of?
- When do we draw the curtains or open them?
- What can you see in a kitchen/lounge/bedroom/bathroom?
- Do the English like their fireplaces?
- What rooms does your house or flat consist of?

Reading 3. Building your dream ...

Exercise 1. Read the text and do the tasks that follow.

1. For most people, a dream home is just ... a dream. But for those people, who have the right combination of money and imagination, building that dream can become reality and the results can be rather strange!
2. A Frenchman named Francois Labbe – built the world's first revolving house in the village of Saint-Isidore, near Nice. Made of metal, it can turn to the sun at the press of a button. A Spanish ex-priest named Justo Gallego spent nearly thirty years building his own personal cathedral in Majorada del Campo, a small town 25 kilometres east of Madrid. The strange building looks like a castle with its two 55-metre towers. The roof is made of zinc and its entrance is similar to that of the White House in Washington DC.
3. Not surprisingly, perhaps, it's in the United States that the idea of dream

homes seems strongest. Jim Onan, of Illinois, USA, built his own five-storey golden pyramid. The pyramid is surrounded by water – and just to make sure there are no unwanted visitors, there are sharks swimming around in it! The pyramid has five bedrooms, six bathrooms and an observatory on the top floor so Jim can watch the stars in peace.

4. But that's tiny compared to the Hollywood home of TV producer Aaron Spelling: the house itself occupies 3,390 square metres, and contains four bars, three kitchens, eight garages, a doll museum and a special room for wrapping presents!

5. And if it's technology you're interested in. computer billionaire Gates spent over \$50 million on his state-of-the-art home by Lake Washington. Everyone who enters receives an electronic pin which controls lights, services and even turns off the TV when you leave the room!

6. Perhaps America's most famous dream home is a white-columned mansion in Memphis, Tennessee, which now attracts 700,000 visitors a year. Graceland, Elvis Presley's "rock' n' roll palace" was decorated in his favourite bright colours – red, orange and green – and is filled with velvet, gold, wall-sized mirrors, and enormous statues. Elvis lived at Graceland with his family from 1957 – but became more and more lonely there. He died alone in an upstairs bathroom in 1977.

Exercise 2. Which of the described places:

A is near Madrid?

B cost over \$25 million?

C has a toy museum inside?

D looks like the White House when you walk in?

E has enormous mirrors on the walls?

F is full of large statues?

G has a special room for wrapping presents?

H has a special system to operate the lights and television?

Exercise 3. What is special about Francois Labbe's house near Nice?

Exercise 4. Draw a rough sketch of Jim Onan's house.

Exercise 5. Which of the houses described in the text would you most like to visit / live in? Why?

Exercise 6. Do you have an idea of your dream home? Describe it.

Listening

Listening 1.

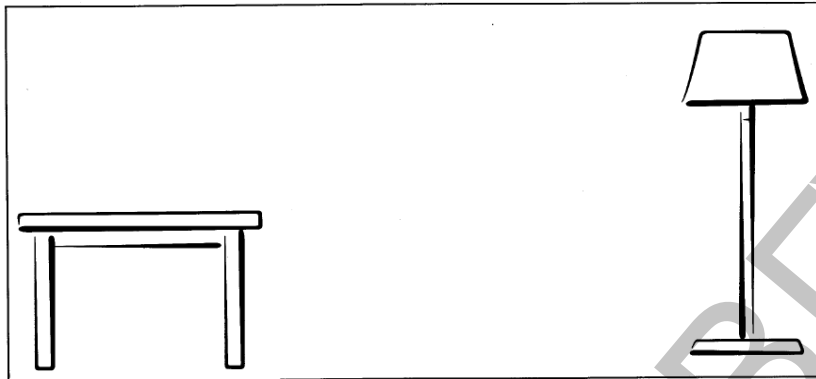
(Headway beginner (Student's book), Unit 8, t. 8.7)

Exercise. Listen to a description of the room. What room is it? Why?

Listening 2.

(Headway beginner (Workbook), Unit 8, t. 8.7)

Exercise. Listen and draw the things in the room.

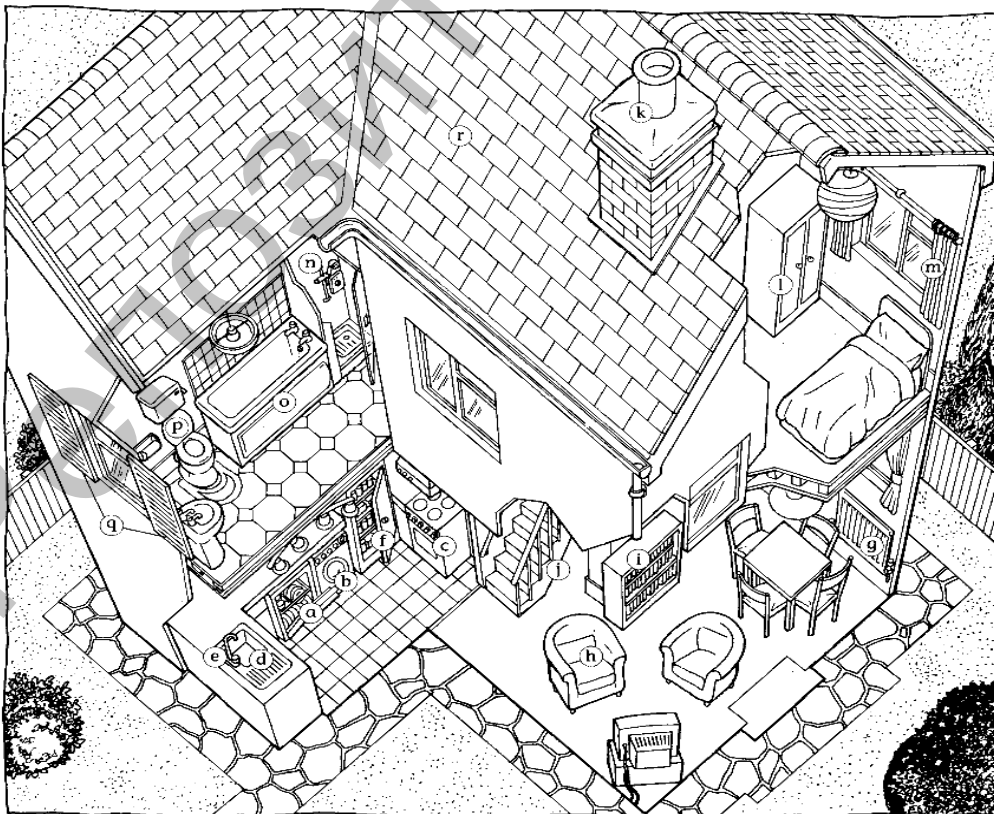


Listening 3.

(Cutting Edge pre-intermediate, Module 14, t. 8)

Exercise. Find these things in the picture and write the correct letter in the box next to the word. Then listen to the tape and check yourself.

- | | | |
|------------|-----------------|-----------|
| cupboard | radiator | bookcase |
| wardrobe | washing machine | armchair |
| sink | chimney | curtains |
| tap | bath | shutters |
| cooker | shower | staircase |
| dishwasher | toilet | roof |



Listening 4.

(Cutting Edge pre-intermediate, Module 14, t. 14.4)

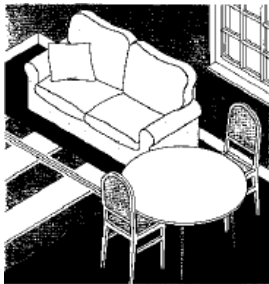
Exercise. Sandra and Tom are talking about a favourite room. Listen and complete the table below.

Questions	Sandra	Tom
1. Where it is		
2. What they do there		
3. Description of the room		
4. Why they like the room		

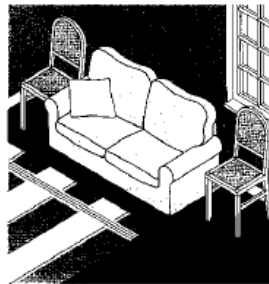
Listening 5.

(Listen Carefully, unit 5, activity 3-5)

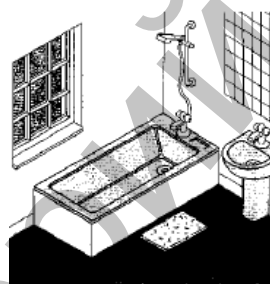
Exercise 1. Rita wants to rent a flat. You will hear her talking to a landlord about it. Which room is the landlord describing? Tick a or b.



1a



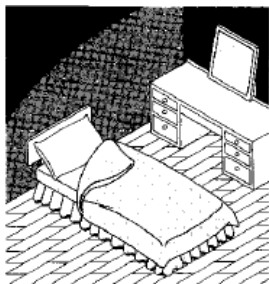
1b



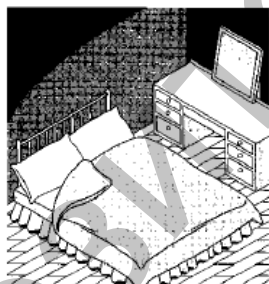
2a



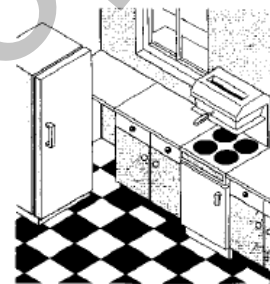
2b



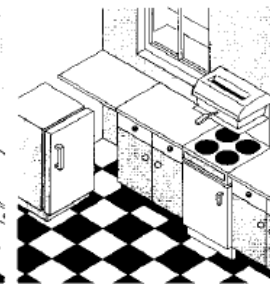
3a



3b



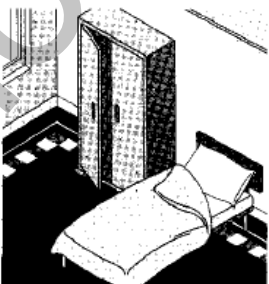
4a



4b



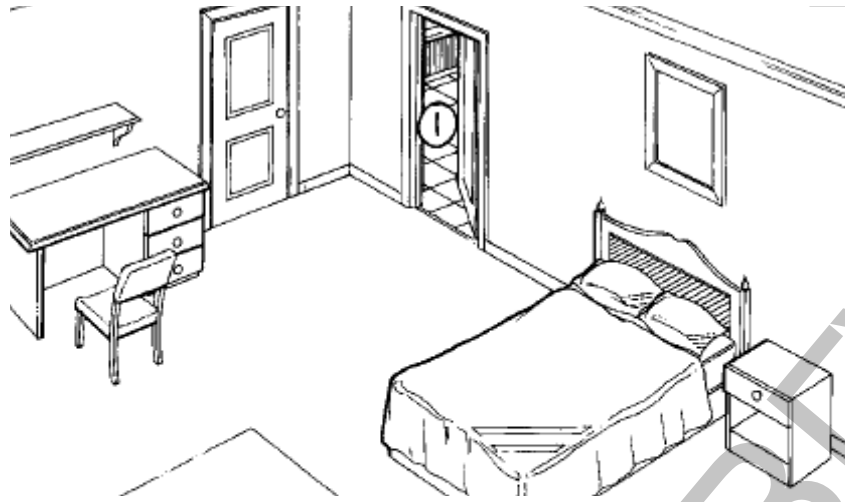
5a



5b

Exercise 2. Mrs Keane has just arrived at her hotel. Listen to the porter showing her where things are in her room. Number the correct places in the picture.

- 1 towels 2 light switch for the bathroom 3 phone 4 phone book 5 kettle 6 information about the hotel 7 ashtray



Exercise 3. Listen to people talking about where they live. Tick the picture of the house or the building they are talking about.



1a



1b



2a



2b



3a



3b



4a



4b



5a



5b



6a



6b



7a



7b



8a



8b

Exercise 4. Listen to people phoning their friends. Tick where each person is.

Place	Kathy	Bill	Susan	Terry	Mr. Lee	Helen
in the garage						
in the bathroom						
in the bedroom						
in the kitchen						
in the living-room						
has gone out						

Speaking

Exercise 1. What about your home? Answer these questions.

- Do you live in a house or flat?
- If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
- If you live in a house, do you have a garden?
- What modern facilities does your flat / house have?
- Does the house / flat belong to you (or your family), or do you rent it?
- Do you have your own garage or personal parking space?
- Would you describe your house / flat as dark or light, noisy or quiet, etc?
- What kind of flooring do you have in your flat?
- Are the walls in your flat whitewashed, tiled, or wallpapered?
- How is your flat lighted?
- What kind of curtains (hangings, blinds) do you have? Do they go well with the wallpaper?
- Is your flat crammed with things?
- What makes your flat look cosy?
- Do you have a convenient working space or a desk at home?

Exercise 2. Read what Kate, Nick, Richard and Karen think about their present homes in Britain and about places they would like to live in. Discuss in pairs which of these houses you would like to live and why.

Richard I like my present home because it's in the country to start with and surrounded by fields and because it's sort of the end of a no-through-road so very few people drive past, it's on an old dirt track. Mind you, you hear them when they do. And because it's an old cottage and it's got an open fire and things like that and I'm a bit of a romantic. If I had a lot of money I'd keep the house I've got but I'd get a nice flat in the middle of London, another one in the middle of Cardiff, because I work in those two places, and I think a small chalet in the Alps - that'd do me.

Karen My ideal living room would contain absolutely everything that you need for everyday life. In fact it would even have the bed in it because I cannot stand having to go upstairs and downstairs having left something that I need upstairs to bring back down. So I'd have all mod cons and every single thing you could imagine that you might need throughout the day there.

Kate I like my present home because it's in the suburbs, in that there are a lot of trees around it but it's only about half an hour's ride from the centre of town. And it's got this ridiculous patch at the end of the garden that's owned by my next-door neighbour that has ducks and chickens and geese who are like guard geese and who quack in the night if there are strangers about. I like that.

Nick I like my present home because it's a flat near the City, about ten minutes out of the City and that's very convenient for getting in, for cycling in, which is what I do. And it's also got a lot of amenities close to it: there's a swimming pool, cinema, library, theatres. And some very good markets as well: fruit and vegetables and clothes and that's why I like the present flat that I've got. If I had a lot of money, I'd keep the flat that I've got in London and I'd buy one out in the country, probably up North which is where I came from originally. In fact, I could probably buy a house up there if I had a lot of money. So that's what I'd do, I'd have the two places one for a 'pied a terre' in London and one for going up to at the weekends.

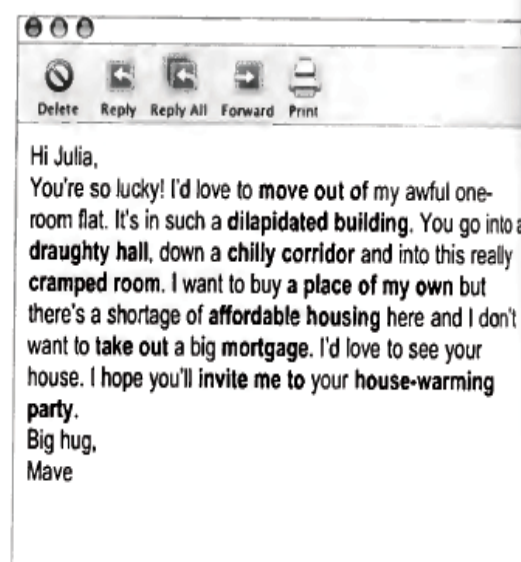
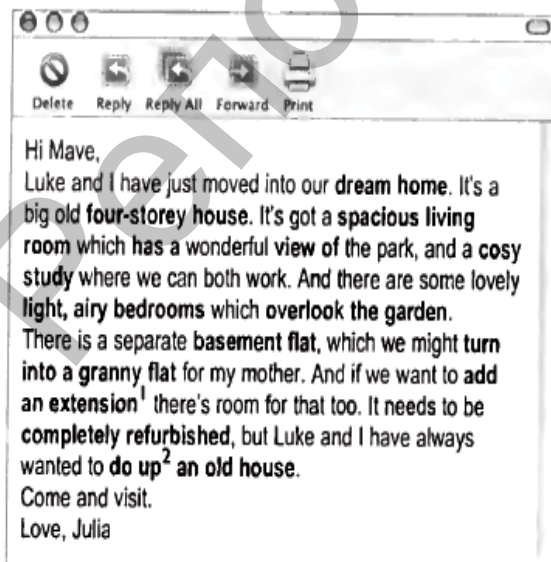
Exercise 3. In the e-mails people describe their living accommodation. Write down all the positive and negative adjectives the authors use. Add your own and then say which features are the most important for you and which negative features do you hate the most?

Positive

Negative

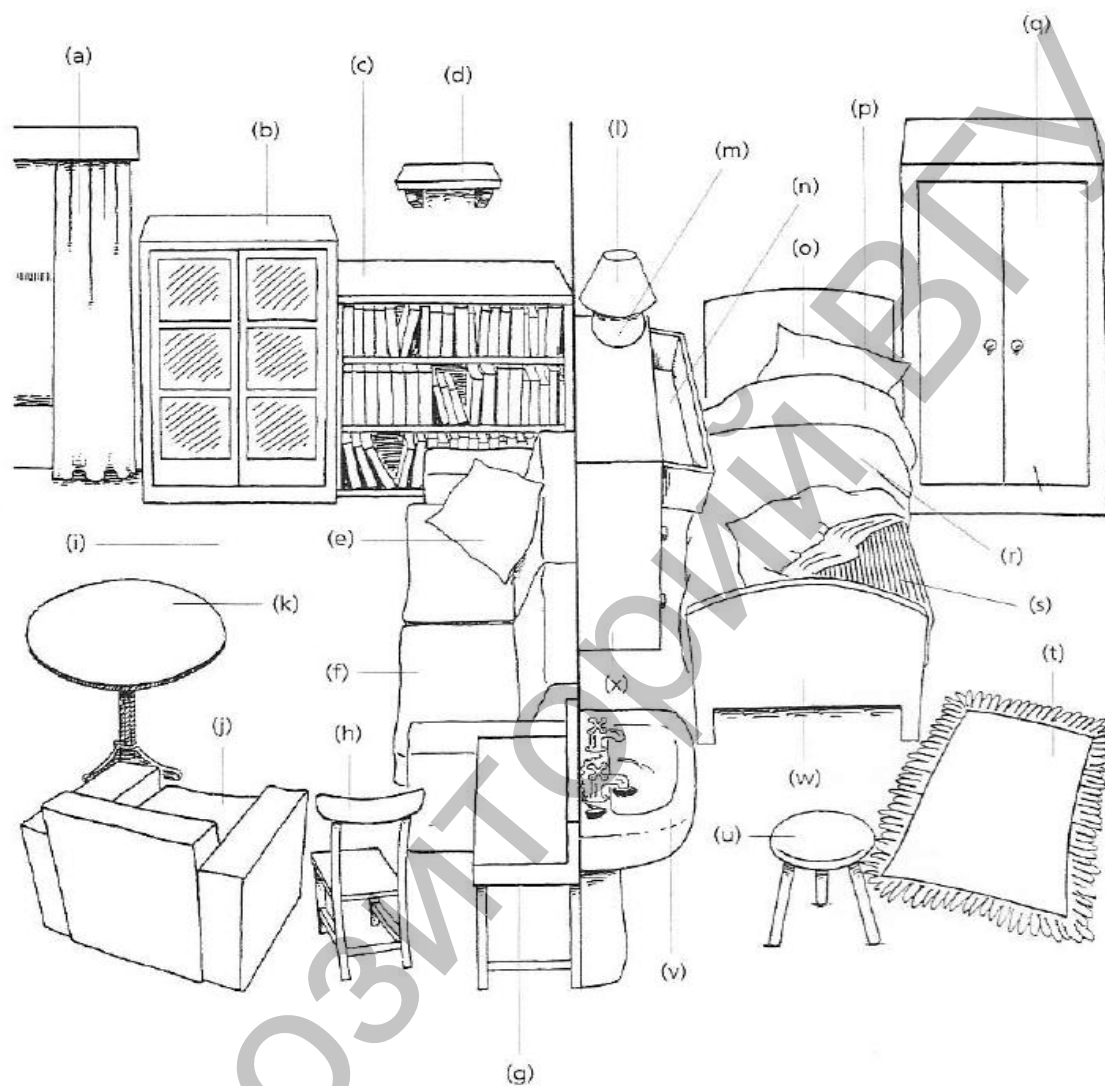
.....

.....



Writing

Exercise 1. Prepare to write a dictation. Put down the names of all the objects (a-x) in the picture, exchange exercise-books with your group mate and check them.



Exercise 2. a) Read the description of the favourite room. Find four mistakes in the picture.

MY FAVOURITE ROOM is our kitchen. Perhaps the kitchen is the most important room in many houses, but it is particularly so in our house because it's not only where we cook and eat but it's also the main meeting place for family and friends. I have so many happy memories of times spent there: special occasions such as homecomings or cooking Christmas dinner; troubled times, which lead to comforting cups of tea in the middle of the night; ordinary daily events such as making breakfast is on dark, cold winter mornings for cross, sleepy children before sending them off to school, then sitting down to read the newspaper with a steaming hot mug of coffee.

Whenever we have a party, people gravitate with their drinks to the kitchen. It always ends up the fullest and noisiest room in the house.

SO WHAT does this special room look like? It's quite big, but not huge. It's big enough to have a good-sized rectangular table in the centre, which is the focal point of the room. There is a large window above the sink, which looks out onto two apple trees in the garden. The cooker is at one end, and above it is a wooden pulley, which is old-fashioned but very useful for drying clothes in wet weather. At the other end is a wall with a large notice-board, which tells the story of our lives, past, present, and future, in words and pictures: a school photo of Megan and Kate, a postcard from Auntie Nancy in Australia, the menu from a takeaway Chinese restaurant, a wedding invitation for next Saturday. All our world is there for everyone to read!

THE FRONT door is seldom used in our house, only by strangers. All our friends use the back door, which means they come straight into the kitchen and join in whatever is happening there. The kettle goes on immediately and then we all sit round the table, drinking tea and putting the world to rights! Without doubt some of the happiest times of my life have been spent in our kitchen.



b) Think of your favourite room. Write down why you like it.

Exercise 3. Using a model, write a composition on one of the topics:

- My Dream House.
- Home Sweet Home.
- I Like to Stay at My Grandma's Place.

Home, sweet home. It does not matter what your home is like - a **country mansion**, a more modest **detached** or **semi-detached house**, a **flat** in a **block of flats** or even a **room** in a **communal flat**. Anyway, it is the place where you once **move in** and start to **furnish and decorate** it to your own taste. It becomes your second "**ego**".

Your second "ego" is very big and disquieting if you have a house. There is **enough** space for everything: a **hall**, a **kitchen** with an **adjacent dining-room**, a **living-room** or a **lounge**, a couple of **bedrooms** and **closets (storerooms)**, a **toilet** and a **bathroom**. You can walk slowly **around the house** thinking what else you can do to **renovate** it. In the hall you cast a glance at the **coat rack** and a **chest of drawers for shoes**. Probably, nothing needs to be changed here.

You come to the kitchen: kitchen **furniture**, kitchen **utensils**, a **refrigerator (fridge)** with a **freezer**, a **dish drainer**, an **electric** or **gas cooker** with an **oven**. Maybe, it needs a **cooker hood**?

The dining-room is lovely. A big **dining table** with **chairs** in the centre, a **cupboard** with **tea sets** and **dinner sets**. There is enough place **to keep all cutlery and crockery in**. You know pretty well **where things go**.

The **spacious** living-room is the heart of the house. It is the place where you can have a chance to see the rest of your family. They come in the evening to sit around the **coffee table** in **soft armchairs** and on the **sofa**. You look at **the wall units**, stuffed with **china**, **crystal** and books. Some place is left for a **stereo system** and a **TV set**. A **fireplace** and **houseplants** make the living-room really **cosy**.

Your bedroom is your private area though most bedrooms are alike: a **single** or a **double bed**, a **wardrobe**, one or two **bedside tables** and a **dressing-table**.

You are quite satisfied with what you have seen, but still doubt disturbs you: 'Is there anything to change?' Yes! The walls of the rooms should be **papered**, and in the bathroom and toilet — **tiled!** Instead of **linoleum** there should be **parquet floors**. Instead of **patterned curtains** it is better to put darker **plain** ones, so that they might not **show the dirt**. You do it all, but doubt does not leave you. Then you start **moving** the furniture **around** in the bedroom, because the dressing-table **blocks out the light**. You are ready to give a sigh of relief, but... Suddenly find out that the lounge is too **crammed up with furniture**.

Those who live in **one-room** or **two-room flats** may feel pity for those who live in houses. They do not have such problems. At the same time they have a lot of privileges: **central heating**, **running water**, a **refuse-chute** and... Nice **neighbours** who like to play music at midnight. **Owners** of small flats are happy to have small problems and they love their **homes** no less than those who live in **three-storeyed palaces**. Home, sweet home.

Section B. Household Chores

Active Words

household duties	to do the washing / to wash
domestic chores	to do ironing / to iron (to press) clothes
to keep / to run the house	to do the washing up / to wash dishes
to have household duties	to do the hoovering / to Hoover
to share domestic chores	to do the vacuum-cleaning / to vacuum
to help smb about the house	to do the cleaning / to clean
to do a thorough cleaning	to do the cooking / to cook
to do work / flat / room	to feed domestic animals
to make one's bed	to do the shopping
to air the room	to wipe the dust off the surface
to tidy up clothes / room	to scrub the dirt off with a brush
to hang up clothes	to sweep the dust off the floors
to mend (to repair)	to clean / to Hoover / to beat the carpets
to lay / to clear the table	to polish / to dust the furniture / the floor
to knit	to take away the rubbish
to decorate	to go and empty the dustbin
to fix	to be in a mess / to make a mess
to whitewash	to look spick and span
tidy	labour-saving devices
untidy	a broom, a mop, a dustpan
clean	a sewing machine
neat	an ironing board
spotless	a tumble drier
filthy	a vacuum cleaner / a Hoover
dirty	a waste bin / a dustbin

Vocabulary Exercises

Exercise 1. *Chore* is another word for a job which is regular and unpleasant. It is often used for jobs around the house. The speakers below are talking about the chores in the box. Which one?

ironing	bed making	vacuum cleaning	washing	cooking
dusting	washing up	window cleaning	shopping	polishing

- Put the dishes in the sink.
- I'd better turn it inside out first or it may go shiny.
- I can't really put them outside. It looks like rain.
- Can you get me a trolley? They're over there, look.
- I think I'll need that big saucepan. Can you reach it?
- The bag's full. That's why it isn't picking up all the dirt.

- G. You've left finger-marks on the outside and the inside.
- H. You've missed part of the mantelpiece. I'll move the ornaments.
- I. You can see your face in this table now - not that you'd want to!
- J. I usually change the sheets and pillow cases on Wednesdays.

Exercise 2. The pictures show six things the woman did this morning. Complete the sentences below.

- 1. She.....
- 2. She.....
- 3. She.....
- 4. She.....
- 5. She.....
- 6. She.....



Exercise 3. a) Match the names of household objects with the verbals denoting household chores.

Model: A toaster is used for making toasts.

a vacuum (cleaner)	washing up
a sewing machine	ironing and pressing
a dishwasher	peeling potatoes
a washing machine	heating a flat
an electric iron	polishing the floor
an electric potato-peeler	beating carpets
a floor polisher	washing clothes
a refrigerator (a fridge)	mixing all sorts of foodstuffs
a boiler	making and mending clothes
a carpet beater	refrigerating food
a mixer	vacuuming (cleaning)

b) Now say what these appliances are used for:

a cooker, a blender, a microwave oven, a coffee machine, a freezer.

Exercise 4. Answer the questions using the prompts below:

<p>What do you use to</p>	<p>clean carpets? wash up the dishes? wash the clothes? get shaved? brush clothes? press clothes? get your hair dry? cut cloth? sweep the floor? make furniture shiny? sew?</p>
---------------------------	---

(a vacuum-cleaner; a shaver; a brush; a dish washer; an iron; a hair-drier; a sewing machine; scissors; a washing machine; a broom; a polish).

Exercise 5. Here is a list of domestic jobs / household chores.

the morning's washing-up	the polishing
the cleaning	the dinner
the breakfast	the evening's washing-up
the lunch	the washing
the weekend cooking	the ironing
the sewing and mending	the weekend shopping
the gardening	the odd jobs around the house
the beds	the weekday shopping

a) How often do you do these things about the house? Complete the sentences about yourself using the phrases from the box.

1. I often
2. I sometimes
3. I occasionally
4. I never

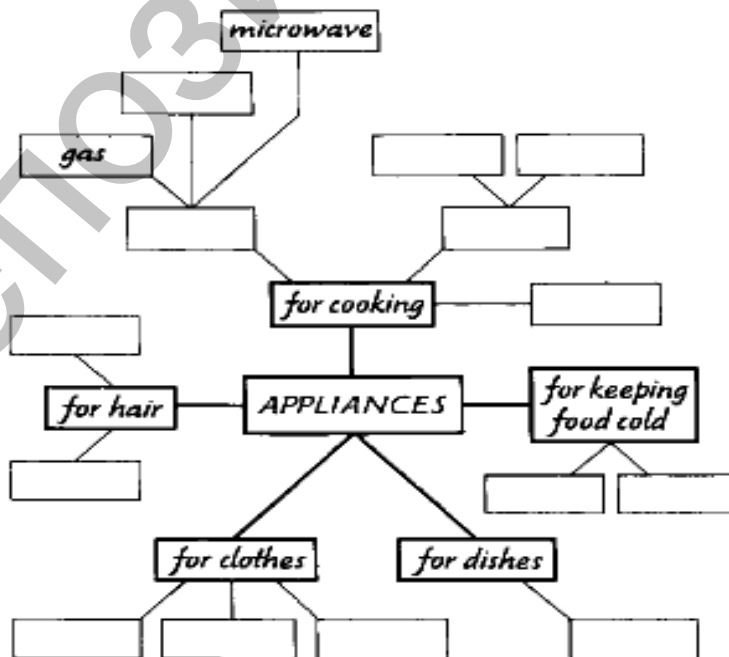
b) Put them in your order of preference.

c) You are going to share domestic jobs in a house / flat with three other students. In groups, you have to choose three-four jobs each. Give your arguments.

Exercise 6. Say which of the household objects you need to perform activities mentioned in the left column.

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1. cleaning washbasins, sinks and baths | a detergent |
| 2. washing | a dustbin |
| 3. mopping the floor | a stiff brush |
| 4. drying cups and plates | a washbasin |
| 5. scrubbing the floor | clothes-lines |
| 6. keeping household refuse | a broom |
| 7. sweeping the floor | a dustpan |
| 8. hanging (out) one's washing | a cleanser |
| 9. washing up | a plate rack |
| 10. getting the dirt with a broom | a mop |

Exercise 7. Complete the vocabulary networks.



Read a joke:

Madam, I have sold you

an electric plug	an electric iron	an electric clock
an electric blanket	an electric drier	an electric fire
an electric bell	an electric mixer	an electric switch
an electric cooker	an electric washer	an electric toothbrush
an electric kettle	an electric sweeper	an electric razor
an electric fan	an electric Singer	an electric teapot
an electric sweeper	an electric knife	an electric light

now allow me to sell you an electric chair.

Exercise 8. Read the note and fill in the necessary verbs. Use each verb once only.

Dear Cinderella,
Your jobs for tonight:
.... the chimney, the floors, the carpets,
.... the stairs, the furniture, the
silver,
.... the beds, the sheets, the house,
.... the garden, the fireplace, the
rubbish,
.... our underwear, the socks, the shirts,
.... the supper, the washing up, the
dishes.
Don't wait up for us. We might be late home.

The Ugly Sisters.

Exercise 9. Give the Russian equivalents to the following English idioms and proverbs. Use them in the sentences of your own.

- No pain, no gain.
- Haste makes waste.
- A stitch in time saves nine.
- Well begun half done.
- A bad workman quarrels with his tools.
- As you make your bed, so you must lie in it.
- If you want a thing well done, do it yourself.
- His fingers are all thumbs.
- The cobbler's wife is the worst shod.

Exercise 10. Translate into Russian.

1. When Mum came in she was horrified to see that I hadn't cleared up the mess in my room.
2. My brother and I do hate washing up. Dad persuaded us to form an agreement between us that we should do it in turn.
3. Every other day I sweep the carpets with the carpet-sweeper, or vacuum them and dust the furniture. It really helps me to keep my room clean and tidy.
4. John's son is rather untidy. He always leaves such a mess in his room. John doesn't like things left around in the room and he makes his son tuck things away and clean the room every day.
5. Once a season we turn out our flat. We usually vacuum the floor, the furniture, beat the carpets and rags, mop the floor, and dust all the rooms. It's a messy and dull job, I should say.
6. Frank is very good at helping his wife. She is proud of him and says that he is always ready to share household chores with her. And apart from that he's an old hand at repairing all sorts of electrical appliances.
7. My wife left a note for me and asked me to vacuum the living-room as we were giving a party that day. That was a chance for me to try out the new vacuum-cleaner and I got on so well that I cleaned the living-room and the bedroom. It was a real joy cleaning with such a marvellous vacuum. I was amazed at the speed with which time went when I was working.
8. I was pressed for time and had a lot of work to do about the house. So I bolted down some coffee and started washing up. The kitchen was just in a hideous mess but I realised that I couldn't leave all that till tomorrow, otherwise it would become a mess of a greater magnitude.
9. Bill, go and empty the dustbin. It's full. And you didn't wipe your feet on the doormat again, said Bill's mother. She was more than frank in her annoyance over the mess she discovered on her coming back home. It really made her upset.
10. Fiona is so fastidious! When she comes home she starts cleaning the flat and she never finishes until she cleans it from top to bottom. It's so depressing, to my mind. Always the same. I get bored with all these things. I don't like it when people make a fuss about house-keeping.

Exercise 11. Translate into English.

1. Моя мама любит вести домашнее хозяйство, хотя это и трудно. И если она делает уборку, то не останавливается до тех пор, пока весь дом не будет безукоризненно чистым.
2. Я помогаю жене по дому: мою посуду, иногда глажу, и, само собой разумеется, выношу мусорное ведро.
3. Моя сестра ленится выполнять домашние обязанности. И когда я вернулась домой, на кухне был ужасный беспорядок.
4. Я хочу почистить ванну и раковину на кухне, но у меня нет чистящего средства. Я попробую потереть все жёсткой щёткой.
5. Когда Сюзанна стирала в ванной бельё, зазвонил телефон. Она вытерла руки о передник и ответила на звонок.
6. Моя тётушка сожгла очередное платье. Она такая рассеянная, что каждый раз, когда гладит, что-нибудь подпалит.
7. Мои друзья так рады, что они купили посудомоечную машину. Теперь они посуду моют один раз в день. Это так экономит время и силы!
8. Мне нравится пылесосить. Это гораздо удобней, чем подметать пол шваброй.
9. Когда ведёшь хозяйство, приходится заниматься обычными утомительными делами: стиркой, уборкой, мытьём посуды, гладить, готовить.
10. Мой сын совсем неопытен в домашних делах. Он не знает, что сначала надо вымыть чашки и стаканы, затем – тарелки и приборы, а уж в самом конце – жирные кастрюли и сковородки.

Reading

Reading 1. My Household Duties

Exercise 1. Read the text.

This is my first year at university and I work really hard. As I am very busy I can't help my parents much in keeping house.

But still I have some household duties. Every day I do my room and my bed, wash up dishes, dust the furniture and take out the rubbish. It is also my duty to buy bread and milk. I usually go to the baker's after I have dinner. I buy some brown and white bread, biscuits and cakes there. The shop is not far from our house and it doesn't take me long to do everyday shopping.

Once a week I help my mother to do all other work about the house. We wash our linen, iron and mend it, clean the flat. We beat the dust out of the carpets, vacuum the floors and polish them. It's not difficult to keep the flat tidy if you do your rooms regularly. This is my usual round of duties. But sometimes I have some other things to do.

When my mother is ill or away from home I do the cooking and the washing up, the buying of food and the planning of meals. I am not a good cook, but my vegetable soup is always tasty. I can also boil an egg or fry some meat. I also lay the table and clear away the dishes. If I'm too busy or can't do these things, all the duties are organized among other members of our family.

Sometimes I have to visit everyday services: hairdresser's, shoemaker's, tailor's, dry-cleaner's, photographer's. At the hairdresser's I have my hair cut and waved. At the shoemaker's I have my shoes and boots repaired, at the photographer's I have my photo taken. Service is generally good, but in some cases it leaves much to be desired.

My brother has his own duties at home. He helps to fix and repair some things. For example, he repairs electrical appliances when they are out of order. He has already repaired our mother's electric iron, my desk lamp and his own shaver.

Last year I was at my grandparents. They are elderly people and need our care and attention. During my stay there I swept the floors and washed them, fed the chickens, collected the eggs and weeded the vegetable-beds. I didn't learn to milk the cow but I helped to feed the other animals: lambs, sheep and pigs. I enjoyed this work very much.

Exercise 2. Complete the table according to the text.

I do every day...	I do once a week...	I sometimes do...

Exercise 3. Retell the text using the table as a guide.

Reading 2. Household Chores

Exercise. Look through the text and fill in the gaps with suitable words. Translate the bolded and underlined words and use them while talking about your household duties.

There are things in our life, which we have to do whether we like it or not. One of such things is It's what someone in the family has to do every day **in spite of** his wish or desire. You can **hardly** find a person who doesn't like comfort, tasty food, clean and tidy clothes. All these things need somebody's attention.

In my opinion the best way to do many things about the house is by splitting the job among the family members. If every member of the family does something about the house, then keeping it isn't difficult or boring, and proves the proverb "Many hands make light work". **For instance**, my regular chore is ... my room. **Generally**, I do it once a week, on Saturday **as** I am **rather** busy during the weekdays. **So** by the end of the week you can find books, cassettes, discs and my clothes on every chair. **As a matter of fact** I usually like to have all my things at hand and don't put them in their right places. Another thing which I have to do daily is after each meal. **But** my favourite chore is for some foodstuffs. **In fact** it is the only thing I like doing about the house. **As for** my younger sisters they are too small to be helpful with doing housework. **Instead** they make a big mess everywhere. Once a week my parents give the flat a big clean and I always try to help them. While my parents are ... the carpets I am ... the furniture and ... the floors. What I most hate doing about the house is ... the windows, **nevertheless** I do it **at least** three times a year. I don't do much ... **because** we have a washing machine. And I must add **as well** that I dislike ... clothes after washing and drying **though** I do it **quite** often.

Frankly speaking, I am not very much keen on doing my housework but I do my best to be helpful.

Reading 3. Mr. and Mrs. Turvey

Exercise. Read the text and say if you ever behave like Mr. and Mrs. Turvey do. What's your attitude to untidy people?

Mr. and Mrs. Turvey both hated housework. They were a very untidy couple who never put things away. When they went to bed, for example, they always left their clothes in a mess on the floor. Their kitchen was a mess, too. Even though they had a dishwasher, they always left the dirty dishes in the kitchen sink and only did the washing-up when there wasn't a clean plate to be found in the house. It was the same with their clothes. They never put them into the washing machine until there was nothing else left to wear. The living room always looked as though a bomb had just gone off. There were things everywhere. There was thick dust on every piece of furniture and the carpet had not been cleaned for weeks. And the bathroom!

One day, when Mr. Turvey couldn't find one of his shoes, and Mrs. Turvey couldn't see her face in the bathroom mirror, they decided it was time to get the house cleaned. So they found Marie, a foreign student at a local language school, who needed some extra money.

Marie came to the house and worked all day long. She washed and dried all the clothes. Then she got out the iron. She ironed the clothes, folded them neatly and put them away. She swept all the dust off the floors with a large broom. She took a wet cloth and wiped the dust off every

surface in the house and then polished the furniture until it was shining. She got out the vacuum cleaner and cleaned all the carpets. In the kitchen the floor was filthy. It was too dirty to wash with a mop, so Marie got on her hands and knees and scrubbed the dirt off with a scrubbing brush. Finally she made the bed and, when she had finished, the house looked spotless.


Mr. and Mrs. Turvey came home that evening. There was nothing on the floor. There was no dust on the furniture. The wood was shining and you could smell the polish. In their bedroom all their clothes were neat, clean and tidy. 'So what do you think?' Mrs. Turvey asked her husband. 'It looks nice and tidy,' he said, 'but how are we ever going to find anything?'

Listening

Listening.

(Listen Carefully, unit 5, activity 2)

Exercise. Roy and Sylvia have a lot of things to do this weekend. Listen to them and decide which things they want to do. Put a tick in the correct column to show who does what.

	Chores	Roy	Sylvia
	clean the bathroom		
	take out the rubbish		
	go shopping		
	clean the car		
	vacuum the carpet		
	clean the fridge		
	clean the windows		
	put away the groceries		
	iron the sheets		

Speaking

Exercise 1. Answer the following questions:

1. Who runs the house in your family?
2. Do other members share household chores with your mother?
3. What work about the house do you do every day and what is done once a season?
4. What makes your home cosy?
5. What labour-saving devices do you have at home?
6. Do you vacuum the floor or sweep it with a broom? Do you ever use a mop to clean the floor?

7. Is your flat crammed with things or does it have just a minimum of furniture in it?
8. How often is a thorough turn-out done in your family? Are you usually tired after the thorough clean-up?
9. How often do you redecorate the rooms? Do you do your own redecoration and repairing or do you prefer to have it done?

Exercise 2. Mr Brown and Mrs Brown are going to meet their relatives at home on Sunday. Study the pictures (A-H) and try to describe what a wife and a husband are going to do tomorrow.



A



B



C



D



E



F



G



H

Exercise 3. Susan Mack is talking to Lynn, one of her friends at the squash club. Lynn doesn't go to work, as she has two small children.

a) Read the dialogue. Develop it and act out.

- Lynn:** I really don't know how you find time to play squash.
Susan: I only play twice a week.
Lynn: But when do you do your housework?
Susan: Well, to begin with, there are only two of us, and, because I work too, Paul does quite a lot in the house.
Lynn: Does he do the washing up?
Susan: Oh yes, he often does the cooking, too. He makes the beds; he does his own ironing...
Lynn: Mine doesn't even do the gardening!
Susan: Doesn't he do anything to help?
Lynn: No, he always makes an excuse. He doesn't even like me doing the hoovering when he's at home. He says it makes too much noise.
Susan: Can I give some advice?
Lynn: Please, do.
Susan: Don't make a fuss. Just don't do any shopping for a few days. He'll soon get hungry.

b) Now role-play a dialogue between Lynn and her husband about sharing domestic chores.

Exercise 4. Sum up all the information and speak on the household duties in your family.

Writing

Exercise 1. Prepare to write a dictation.

Exercise 2. Get ready to write on one of the following topics:

- How I helped my parents before Christmas.
- Mum is the best housewife.
- Dad hates doing everyday domestic chores.

UNIT IV. HUMAN PERSONALITY

Section A. Appearance

Active Words

Human Body

1. **Head** (back / top of the head):
 - Hair
 - Face: eye (eyebrow, eyelid, eyelashes); nose; nostril; ear; mouth; cheek; cheekbones; chin; temple; forehead; jaw; tooth (teeth); lip (upper/lower); tongue; neck; throat
2. **Body**:
 - Upper limbs: shoulder; armpit; arm; forearm; hand; fist; finger; nail; elbow; wrist; palm
 - Lower limbs: hip; bottom; leg; thigh; knee; calf; shin; ankle; foot (feet); heel; sole; toe
 - Chest / breasts
 - Back
 - Waist
 - Stomach / belly, navel
 - Skin
3. **Characteristics**: height; weight; build; bearing; constitution; figure; complexion; countenance; stature; gait
4. **Appearance** (looks): to look (well, nice, good, great, terrific, charming, smart, beautiful, elegant, fit, chic, marvellous, fashionable, trendy, fantastic, lovely, super, well-dressed, conservative, casual, shabby, smashing, untidy, messy, scruffy, trendy, old-fashioned, badly-dressed); to look like smb.; to resemble smb.; to look alike; to be a copy of smb.; to look old / young; to look one's best; to look one's age; to look old/young for one's age; to take after smb.

Descriptions

Head	big, small, round, square
Neck	slender, thin, thick
Face	oval, square, long, round, thin, chubby, heart-shaped
Complexion	dark, fair, flid, pasty, sallow, fresh, pale, swarthy, tanned / sun burnt, olive, oriental
Countenance	calm, shy, friendly, aggressive, gloomy, moody, cheerful, quiet, thoughtful, confused, amusing

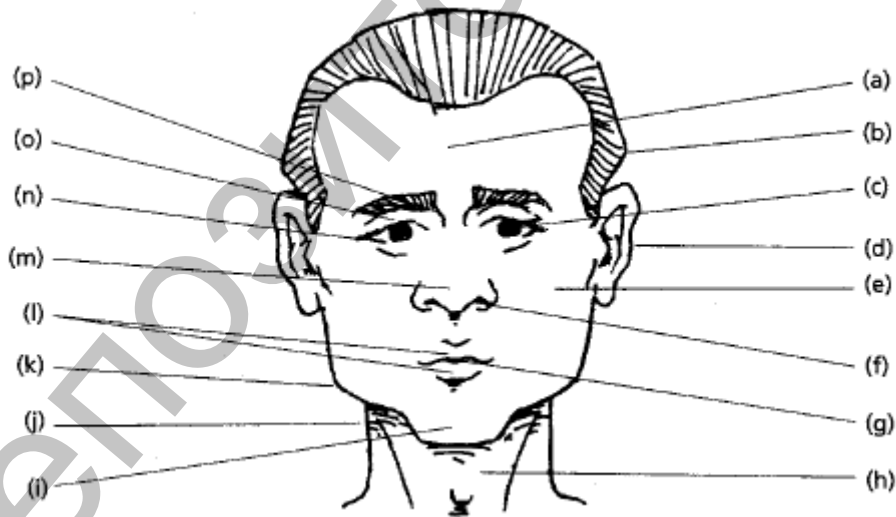
Features	delicate, coarse, ugly, plain, ordinary, soft, small, large, regular, irregular, clear-cut, indistinct, striking
	with: a mole, a scar (scarred), a wart, wrinkles/lines (wrinkled), freckles (freckled), a beard, moustache, (side)whiskers, a (beauty-)spot, dimples
Forehead	broad, narrow, high, low, large, small, domed, retreating
Nose	straight, long, hooked, aquiline, flat, snub, fleshy, pointed, thin, turned up / upturned
Mouth	large, small, strong-willed, weak-willed, heart-shaped
Lips	full, thick, thin, painted
Skin	rough, smooth, soft, dark, light, olive, tanned
Voice	shrill, screaming, loud, calm, soft
Teeth	large, small, even, uneven, close-set, sparse, false, perfect, imperfect, artificial
Cheeks	plump, hollow / sunken, rosy, pale, clean-shaven, unshaven, with dimples
Cheekbones	high, wide
Chin	double, round, pointed, firm, massive, cleft
Jaw	square, strong, long
Eyes	blue, brown, grey, hazel, bulging, sunken, big, small, dark, wide-set, close-set, deep-set, expressive, slanting, almond
Eyebrows	straight, bushy, thin, pencilled
Eyelashes	straight, thin, thick, short, long, curving
Ear	big, small, pointed, lop-eared
Hair	fair, blond(e), ash-blond, dyed, coloured, white, grey, golden, sandy, flaxen, auburn, dark, brown, chestnut, mousy, black, ginger, jet-black, red;
	abundant, thin, thick, luxuriant, short, long, straight, wavy, curly, neat, untidy, silky, bald, balding, receding, thinning;
Hair-do Hairstyles Hair-cut	to grow, to wash, to dye, to colour, to comb, to brush one's hair; to wear one's hair short / long / loose / swept back, shoulder-long (shoulder length), waist-long (waist length), parted in the middle / on one side; to wear one's hair in a knot, in a bun, in a ponytail, with plaits, with a fringe; to have a permanent wave (water wave), (centre / side) parting, a crew-cut; to wear a beard / a moustache / side-whiskers
Shoulders	broad, narrow, round, square

Legs	long, short, crooked, large, small, lank, shapely, stout
Arms/Hands	long, short, lank, bony, well-shaped, plump, fat, thick
Fingers	thumb, index finger, middle finger, ring finger, little finger, nail
Height	short, tall, medium, (below) average, to be 165 high (in height)
Build Figure Body	large, small, powerful, slim, strong, stocky, graceful, stooping, delicate, weak, clumsy, stout, bony, skinny, slender, perfect, fat, overweight, ordinary, well-made, well-built, muscular, attractive, unattractive, impressive, unimpressive, good-looking, charming, ugly, beautiful, plain, common, lovely, pleasant, unpleasant, pretty, obese, anorexic, lean, well-fed, paunchy
Gait	steady, unsteady, heavy, light, with a stoop, with a limp, awkward, rapid, slow

Vocabulary Exercises

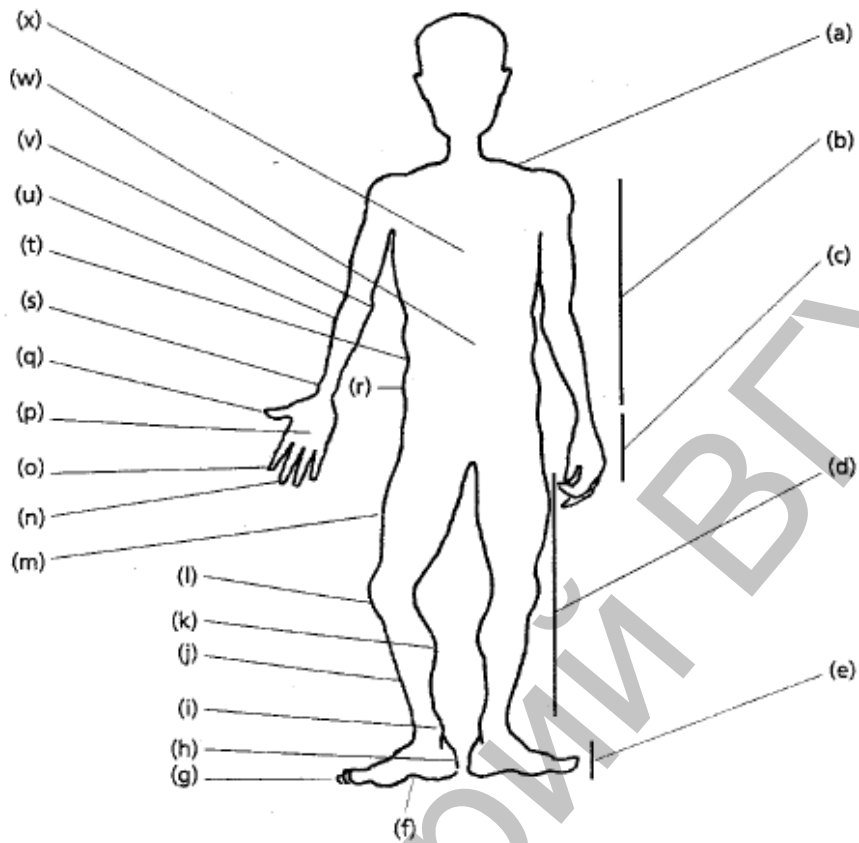
Exercise 1. Match each of the following parts of the head with the correct letter in the picture below.

hair eyebrow mouth eye eyelid chin lips jaw
throat forehead nose neck eyelashes nostril cheek ear



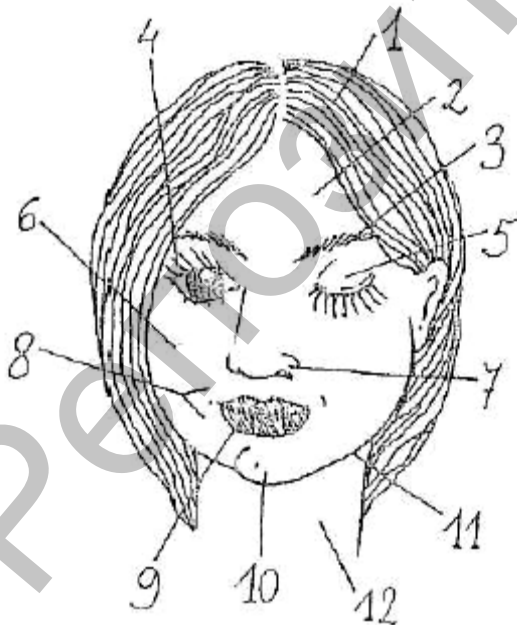
Exercise 2. Match each of the following parts of the body with the correct letter in the picture below.

shoulder calf chest thigh leg sole palm thumb
forearm arm shin wrist hand waist nail elbow
stomach toe knee ankle heel foot hip finger

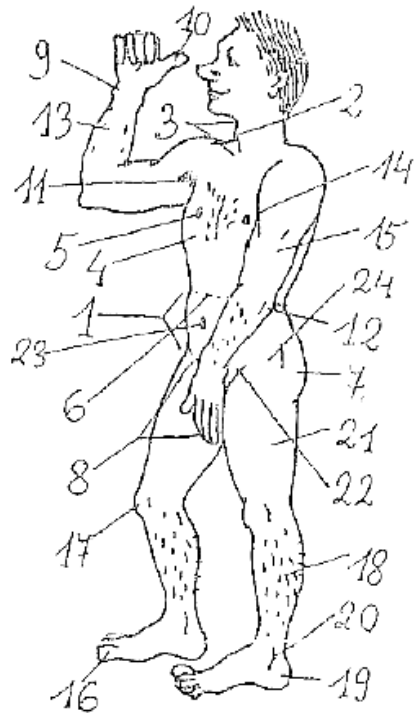


Exercise 3. Put down in your exercise-books the names for the indicated parts of the head (1-12) (picture A) and the body (1-24) (picture B). Watch your spelling.

A



B



Exercise 4. How many does a person usually have?

- 1 head _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, _____.
2 _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, _____.
10 _____, _____.
32 _____.
Uncountable _____.

Exercise 5. There are fourteen words describing parts of the body (either across or down) in this word square. Can you find them?

C	E	L	B	O	W	A
H	T	I	A	E	N	R
I	O	P	C	Y	A	M
N	E	C	K	E	I	H
I	H	A	N	K	L	E
K	C	H	E	S	T	E
C	H	E	E	K	A	L

Exercise 6. Give Russian / English equivalents to the following:

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. turned-up nose | 1. тонкие брови |
| 2. well-cut lips | 2. острый подбородок |
| 3. perfect teeth | 3. редкие рыжие волосы |
| 4. straight eyelashes | 4. неправильные черты лица |
| 5. graceful figure | 5. прямые каштановые волосы |
| 6. charming smile | 6. болезненный цвет лица |
| 7. bushy eyebrows | 7. мягкие волнистые волосы |
| 8. plump hands | 8. пойти внешне в отца |
| 9. smooth skin | 9. курносая девочка с веснушками |
| 10. curly hair | 10. руки красивой формы |
| 11. grey hair | 11. крючковатый нос |
| 12. slender figure | 12. походить на кого-либо |
| 13. rough skin | 13. морщинистое тело |
| 14. broad shoulders | 14. накрашенные губы |
| 15. rosy cheeks | 15. выбритое лицо |
| 16. fair complexion | 16. загорелая кожа |
| 17. deep-set hazel eyes | 17. лоб со шрамом |
| 18. sunburnt complexion | 18. мужчина с усами и бородой |
| 19. even teeth | 19. лысый старик |
| 20. ugly jaw | 20. сутулая девушка |

Exercise 7. Find the opposites to the following characteristics:

- straight
- regular
- well-shaped
- fair
- thick
- plump
- high
- wide-set
- short
- narrow
- large
- bony
- slim
- charming
- plain
- hollow
- smooth
- even
- perfect
- loud

Exercise 8. Very often we form descriptions like this: *ginger-haired, good-looking, well-dressed, shortish.*

a) From these jumbled words form words for describing people. You can use the words more than once and the suffix *-ish*:

looking round mixed red legged
haired dark good aged
middle skinned faced long tanned

b) Try to give your own examples of the same kind.

Exercise 9. Read Mary's description. Which sentence talks about:

1. who the person is, and the writer's relationship to her?
2. her general appearance?
3. her build and height?
4. her eyes?
5. her hair?
6. her age?

A She's a very attractive little girl – she always looks happy and she's got a lovely smile.

B Her eyes are blue, just like her father's.





C She's about average height for her age ... and she's quite slim.

D She's got beautiful, blonde hair ... and it's her natural colour!

E Louise is my youngest cousin, and she lives not far from my family.

F She'll be ten next birthday.

Exercise 10. WANTED! MISSING! Complete the gaps in these police posters.

<p>WANTED FOR MURDER</p>  <p>Ian Prowse White, height 6ft,-faced, hair, skin</p>	<p>Wanted for Armed Robbery</p>  <p>Sandra King White, height 5ft 4, hair, build,-faced</p>	<p>Missing</p>  <p>Louise Fox age 7, Asian appearance,, hair.</p>	<p>Wanted dead or alive</p>  <p>Jack 'Dagger' Flagstone 6ft, with and; build.</p>
--	---	---	---

Exercise 11. a) Study the difference in the questions:

- What does she look like? (*about physical appearance*)
- She is tall, and she has got blue eyes and blonde hair.

- What is she like? (*about either character or appearance or both*)
- She is very lazy.

- What does she like? (*about preferences*)
- Her great passion is travelling.

b) Put right questions to the following statements:

1. She is so marvellous and elegant.
2. He is fond of gardening very much.
3. She is very friendly and really charming.
4. He takes after his father in appearance.
5. She is keen on painting.
6. He is a very handsome young man.

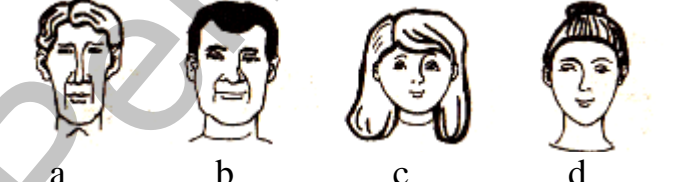
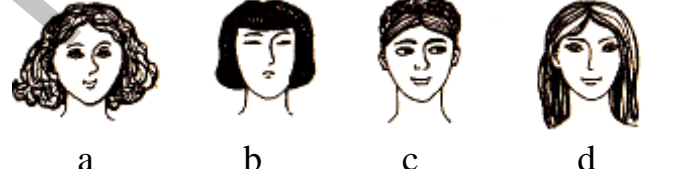
c) Translate the following sentences with the verb 'to look' into Russian.




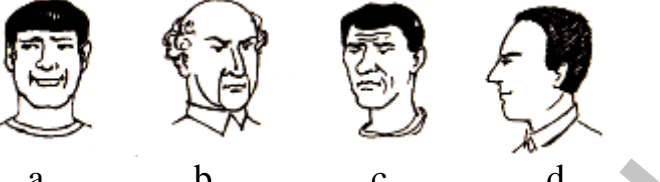
1. She looks her best in jeans.
2. She looks quite old for her age.
3. You don't look yourself! What's wrong?
4. She looks like a Barbie doll.
5. You don't look your age.
6. He looks like his brother.
7. She and her sister look alike. They are twins.
8. My mother looks young for her age.

Exercise 12. Match the questions with the answers.





- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| a) How old is he (she)? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No, he hasn't. • It's dark and wavy and he is wavy. • He's quite slim, and attractive, but he looks a bit untidy sometimes. |
| b) How tall is he (she)? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I don't know exactly, but I think he's in his forties. • I think they are brown. |
| c) Is he (she) black or white? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • White. • He's about average height. • She's quite good-looking but a bit overweight. |
| d) What does he (she) look like? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It's short and dark. • He looks a bit strange. • He's black. |
| e) What is his (her) hair like? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It's completely white. • About 1.80 m, I suppose. • He's in his twenties. |
| f) What colour are his (her) eyes? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • She's not very tall. • They're grey. • He's very tidy and well-dressed. • He's got a moustache, but not a beard. |
| g) Has he got a beard/moustache? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He looks very ordinary – average height, average build. • She's middle-aged, about 55. |





Exercise 13. Look at the pictures below and choose the right word from the lists to describe the shape of one's face, eyes, nose, chin, lips, and forehead.





	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) oval b) round c) long d) square 	face
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) almond b) slanting c) round d) narrow 	eyes





 <p>a b c d</p>	<p>a) aquiline b) hooked c) straight d) upturned</p>	<p>nose</p>
 <p>a b c d</p>	<p>a) protruding b) split c) double d) pointed</p>	<p>chin</p>
 <p>a b c d</p>	<p>a) thin b) plump c) thick d) heart-shaped</p>	<p>lips</p>
 <p>a b c d</p>	<p>a) wrinkled b) narrow c) balding d) high</p>	<p>forehead</p>





Exercise 14. Match as many words as you can to the pictures.

1  2  3  4 

5  6  7  8 

9  10  11  12 

13  14  15  16 

17  18  19  20 

- a. round chin
- b. long thin neck
- c. curved eyebrows
- d. long straight hair
- e. curved mouth
- f. short curly hair
- g. thin eyebrows
- h. pointed nose
- i. square chin
- j. big mouth
- k. thick eyebrows
- l. long nose
- m. short straight hair
- n. narrow eyes
- o. pointed chin
- p. short thick neck
- q. small mouth
- r. small round eyes
- s. short nose
- t. wide surprised eyes

Exercise 15. Match the pictures with their descriptions. Add some other details.

1.
He has short black hair.
He has a pointed black beard.
He has a narrow face.

2.
She has a round face.
She has blue eyes.
She has a pointed nose.
She has thin lips.

3.
He has dark curly hair.
He has a square chin.
He has thick eyebrows.

4.
He has black hair.
He has a black beard.
He has a wide face.

5.
She has a round pretty face.
She has blue eyes.
She has a round nose.
She has thick lips.

6.
He has dark curly hair.
He has a square chin.
He has thin eyebrows.



Exercise 16. Match the nouns in column A with the possible adjectives in column B and translate these word combinations into Russian.

- | A | | B |
|---------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. face | hazel | tiny |
| 2. hair | wrinkled | even |
| 3. smile | fleshy | slender |
| 4. eyes | fair | fair |
| 5. skin | oval | straight |
| 6. complexion | hollow | broad |
| 7. arms | smooth | narrow |
| 8. finger | plump | bushy |
| 9. nose | delicate | ordinary |
| 10. eyebrows | tanned | plain |
| 11. figure | pointed | high |
| 12. voice | shrill | ugly |
| 13. chin | chestnut | bony |
| 14. legs | stooping | irregular |
| 15. teeth | abundant | ill-shaped |
| 16. features | dimpled | slim |
| 17. mouth | shapely | rough |
| 18. cheeks | graceful | plump |
| 19. lashes | turned-up | full |
| 20. shoulders | coarse | sweet |
| 21. forehead | quiet | charming |

Exercise 17. a) Which is the odd word out? Give your reasons.

1. heavy, light, slim, small, overweight, fat, thin, big, wavy;
2. handsome, plain, good-looking, pretty, attractive, green, beautiful;
3. red, grey, short, curly, tall, blond, straight, black, brown, long, fair

b) Now make up the same task for your group mates.

Exercise 18. a) Read through the following descriptions of Janet, Donna, Colin, and Robert.

Janet

She's sophisticated. Well-dressed, expensive hairstyle and so on. I'd say she was in her late thirties or early forties, but she looks younger. She's about average height and very slim. Her hair's very blonde, dyed, I think, but I'm not sure about that. It's always very neat, not long. She's got pale grey eyes with thin eyebrows. Her face is always sunburned and very well made up. It's an attractive face ... not really beautiful, but very attractive, you know what I mean. High cheekbones, small chin ... oh and yes, there's a beauty spot on her left cheek. She's a very calm and reliable sort of person, very sociable and always very, very polite.

Donna

Well, she's quite a lively, talkative person in her late teens. She's fairly tall with a good figure. She's got a heart-shaped face with a small, sort of turned-up nose. It's very attractive really. She's got long, black wavy hair and blue eyes with very long eyelashes. Her complexion is ... well, she's olive-skinned. Her lips are very full and she's got dimples in her cheeks.

Colin

He's a very big guy, you know, well-built with very broad shoulders. Not fat, really, really just well-built. He's in his early thirties. He's got a long face with thin lips. Oh, and a small scar on his chin. He's got very short, fair hair but with long sideburns and a moustache. Eyes ... I haven't really noticed the colour, he wears glasses. He's got thick eyebrows and a kind of a long, straight nose. He's fairly reserved, thoughtful, and sometimes even moody.

Robert

Robert's a wonderful person really. He's elderly but not old ... still very lively and amusing. He's probably in his early seventies. He's got white hair, receding a bit, and a small white beard. He's of medium build, a little overweight perhaps. He's got very nice, large, brown eyes and he always seems to be smiling ... lots of wrinkles round the eyes, laughter lines I think you call them. He's got a very high, lined forehead which makes him look very intelligent, which he is, of course.

b) Look at the descriptions and complete the table.

Name	Janet	Donna	Colin	Robert
Age				
Build				
Height				
Hair colour				
Hair style				
Face				
Eyes				
Complexion				
Features				
Dress				
Personality				

Exercise 19. Fill in the blanks with the words given in brackets.

- A. Alice is thirteen years old. She is tall for her Her hair is ... and Her eyes are ... and her cheeks are ..., she has a ... mouth and pretty ... teeth. But she has a ... nose and she does not like it.
(white, turned-up, rosy, soft, fair, age, grey, small)
- B. The girl was between nine and ten years old. She had ... legs and ... arms, two ... pig-tails, a freckled ... that turned-up and eyes that were almost green and almost brown. (yellow, long, nose, long)
- C. Near the park I saw a man on horseback. I saw at once that he was a stranger. He was very tall, dressed in rich clothes, with a gold chain hanging about his ... and seemed to be about forty years old. His face was ... and ..., the eyes were ... and ..., the mouth was small with a cruel ... on it, the forehead ... and marked with a scar. The man's complexion was ... , his hair like my own was He had a beard and moustache.
(wavy, dark, long, thin, large, shining, smile, neck, high, black)
- D. His long-nosed face is always When he smiles he shows his uneven They are And his smile isn't He speaks in a thin screaming (teeth, pale, kind, voice, yellow)
- E. 1. The officer's face was ... with a bronzed
2. When I was nineteen years old, I was a ... young man. I was not very tall and had a ... chest. My hair was ... and ... eyes were large.
3. Katrina was the most beautiful at the party. She was tall and dark and had a sweet ... face and fine eyes. Her figure was
4. His well-formed nose, ... lips and his fine figure impressed the company a lot.

5. He was a tall elderly man, ... after his summer on the Black Sea. His ... hair was cut very short, but was still
(tanned, slender, broad, grey, wavy, thin, round, clean-shaven, complexion, thick, handsome, coal-black)

Exercise 20. Read and translate the passages.

A.

The colonel is a fine-looking man. His hair is white. So is his moustache. His face is cleanly shaven showing a bronzed complexion. The expression of his face is kind though firm.

The colonel has three sons. Basil, the eldest of the boys, is seventeen years of age. He is a fine-looking lad though not handsome. He looks very brave and strong. His hair is straight and black. He is, in fact, the son of his father.

How very unlike him is Lucien, the second of age. Lucien is delicate, with a light complexion and very fair hair. He is more like what his mother was, for she was a blonde. The colonel's youngest son is a quick-witted, curly-haired boy – cheerful at all times.

B.

Among the passengers there were two who interested me very much. One, a man of about thirty, was one of the tallest men I ever saw. He had yellow hair, a thick yellow beard, a handsome face and large eyes. His face made me think of someone I had seen before but at the time I could not remember who it was. The big man's name was Sir Haggard.

The other man was short, stout and dark. He was always very neat and clean-shaven, he always wore an eye-glass in his right eye, and he never took it out. At first I thought he even slept in it, but afterwards found that this was not so. He put it in his trousers pocket when he went to bed, together with his false teeth, of which he had two beautiful sets.
(*H.R.Haggard*)

C.

Cedric was not tall, but broad-shouldered, long-armed and powerfully-made. His face was broad with large blue eyes, open and frank features, fine teeth and a well-formed head. He was frank but of a nasty temper. There was pride and jealousy in his eyes, for his life had been spent in maintaining his rights. His long yellow hair was not very grey, although he was almost sixty. (*W.Scott*)

Exercise 21. Make drawing sketches according to these short descriptions:

- 1) a thin-faced girl with straight hair;
- 2) a round-faced girl with wavy hair;

- 3) a dark-skinned woman with curly hair;
- 4) a middle-aged man with a crew-cut;
- 5) a bald man with freckles;
- 6) a chubby-faced man with a beard and moustache;
- 7) an elderly man with receding hair and wrinkles.

Exercise 22. Translate into English using your active words.

1. Он высокий и тощий, с длинными руками и ногами, впалыми щеками и торчащими скулами.
2. Когда я впервые его увидела, это был пятидесятилетний мужчина с огненно-рыжими волосами и веснушками. Его темные, глубоко посаженные глаза были большими и печальными, брови были четко очерчены и довольно густые.
3. Его сестры очень похожи друг на друга: обе круглолицые, с вьющимися каштановыми волосами, вздернутыми носами и пухленькими губками.
4. Жена моего брата – стройная девушка с волосами почти до пояса. Ее волосы обычно распущены с пробором на левую сторону.
5. Я не забочусь о своей внешности и обычно выгляжу неряшливо.
6. Она выглядела как сорокалетняя женщина, хотя была намного моложе.
7. В настоящее время модным среди девушек считается красить волосы.
8. Мой сосед – очень неприятный человек. Он упитанный, с брюшком и маленького роста. У него светлые, редкие, коротко стриженные волосы, небритые высокие скулы, маленький рот и крючковатый нос. Его лоб – узкий и низкий, глаза – выпуклые и широко расставленные. Когда он улыбается, можно видеть его редкие неровные крупные зубы. Его морщинистое с веснушками лицо имеет желтовато-бледный цвет.
9. У Джейн черные как смоль волосы, выразительные голубые глаза, длинные загнутые ресницы.
10. Мы составляем очень смешную пару: он маленький, толстенький и лысый, а я высокая, худая и бледная. Он похож на мать, а я пошла в отца.

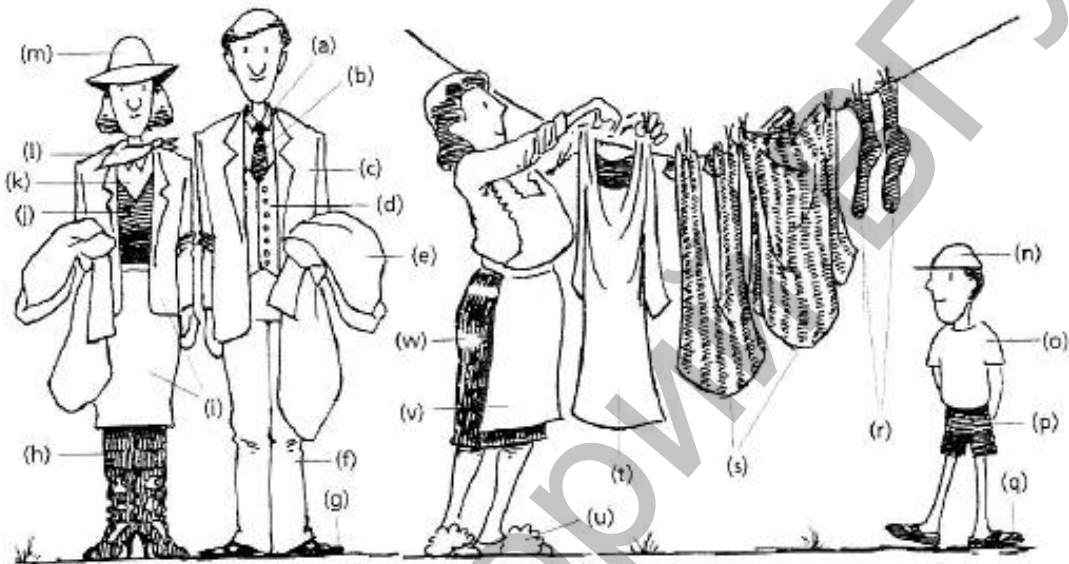
Clothes

Clothing	Footwear/Hats	Material	Accessories
(over-/rain-/fur-/tail-/waist-) coat dress / frock costume / suit blouse skirt trousers / pants jeans shorts sweater jumper pullover shirt jacket apron cardigan nightie / pyjamas muffler/scarf/ shawl gloves / mittens hose/tights/sock	boots (high-/low-/flat-heeled) shoes stiletto shoes trainers slippers rubbers sandals sneakers wellingtons overshoes sole heel toe laces	(pin)-striped plain flowery polka-dotted checked spotted *** to be made of: silk denim cotton leather velvet wool nylon suede tweed lycra polyester satin	belt bow (bow) tie braces buckle button collar crease cuff cut handkerchief hem lapel lining pocket ribbon seam sleeves zip
to wear (well/ badly) / shoes size 4 to have smth on to be dressed / to get dressed to try on to dress up to put on / to take off to hang up to change out of smth into to let out / to let down to take in / to take up to fit (like a glove) to suit / to become to match / to go with to grow out of to afford to come into fashion to be dressed in the latest fashion to look well on smb to be tight / loose on smb to be a misfit / to be a good fit	beret cap hat panama	in fashion / out of fashion loose tight expensive cheap baggy close-fitting well-dressed badly-dressed fashionable old-fashioned trendy chic smart / elegant scruffy messy sleeveless long-sleeved V-neck round-neck	

He has a coat on. = He is wearing a coat. = He is dressed in a coat.

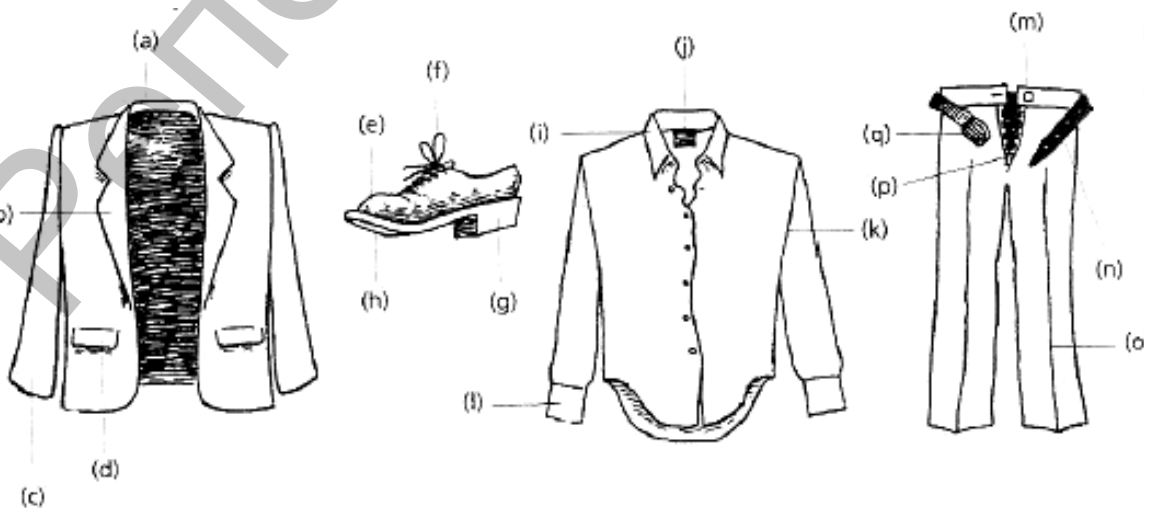
Exercise 1. Match each of the following items of clothing with the correct letter (a-w) in the pictures below.

- | | | | | | |
|----------|-----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| jacket | socks | boots | suit | apron | cap |
| overcoat | shorts | shirt | T-shirt | pullover | trousers |
| shoes | waistcoat | sandals | tie | dress | skirt |
| slippers | scarf | blouse | pyjamas | hat | |



Exercise 2. Match each of the following parts of clothing with the correct letter (a-q) in the pictures below.

- | | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|------|
| label | heel | collar | lapel | sole | seam |
| pocket | crease | sleeve | belt | laces | toe |
| lining | zip | buckle | | | |



Exercise 3. Write down:

- 1 Five things usually worn by women only
- 2 Five things usually worn by men only
- 3 Five things worn by men and women
- 4 Five more items of clothing you have at home

Exercise 4. Write 3 items of clothing that collocate with these materials.

- 1 silk 2 cotton 3 leather 4 woollen 5 suede 6 denim

Exercise 5. Translate into Russian.

A

I got up at 7.30, had a shower, **got dressed**, and had breakfast. It was a cold morning so I **put on** my coat and left home about 8.20. When I got to work I **took** my coat **off** and **hung it up** behind the door. It was hot in the office, so I **took** my jacket **off** as well. During my lunch break I had a look round the shops. I saw a nice jacket in one place and **tried it on**, but it didn't **fit** me - it was too small and they didn't have the **right size**. When I got home I took off my suit and **changed into** jeans and a T-shirt.

B

1. Can I **try on** these grey shoes in the window?
2. I love **dressing up** for parties as I normally **wear** jeans.
3. The skirt is too **tight** and too short - it needs **letting out** and **letting down**.
4. The dress is too **loose** and too long - it needs **taking in** and **taking up**.
5. He **changed out** of his weekend clothes **into** his uniform.
6. Red usually doesn't **suit** people with ginger hair.
7. Her black bag **matches** her shoes.
8. Those shoes don't **fit** the boy any more. He's **grown out of** them.
9. **Do up** your jacket before you go out.
10. I can't **undo** these buttons - my hands are too cold.

C

1. A **silk** shirt feels soft and light but also warm.
2. **Cotton** shirts are cool but they need ironing.
3. **Velvet** skirts are rich and warm for winter parties.
4. Jeans are usually made of **denim**.
5. **Suede** is a kind of leather but it isn't shiny.
6. **Nylon**, **polyester** and **lycra** are artificial fibres.

Exercise 6. Put the correct form of *wear* or *dress* in the spaces below.

- (a) Students normally ... very informally.
- (b) She often ... in black.
- (c) They usually ... jeans and sweaters.
- (d) They were ... in jeans and sweaters.
- (e) What were they ...?
- (f) How were they...?
- (g) He can wash, shave and ... in ten minutes.
- (h) She was ... an evening
- (i) The men were in evening
- (j) It's informal. There's no need to ... up.

Exercise 7. Put the right verb, *match*, *go with*, *become*, *suit* or *fit*, into each of these sentences.

- 1. The blue dress... her properly now when she's lost some weight.
- 2. The blue of her dress... the blue of her eyes.
- 3. That blue dress... the girl with the blonde hair.
- 4. This silk dress doesn't... trainers.
- 5. This dress ... you nicely.
- 6. I want a hat to ... this coat.
- 7. This white blouse ... you perfectly.
- 8. It's your size. The jacket ... you well.

Exercise 8. Put these sentences in a logical order.

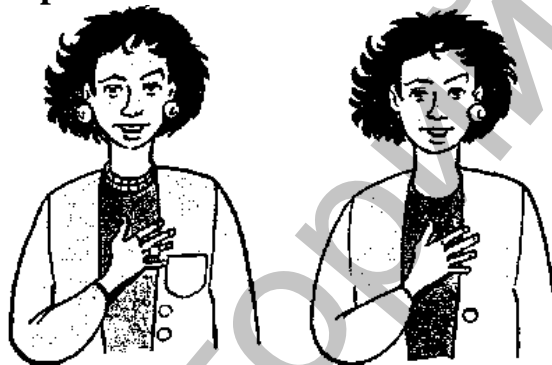
- a He took off his jeans.
- b He put his shoes back on.
- c He tried on the trousers.
- d He went into the changing room.
- e He took them off.
- f He paid for the trousers.
- g He took off his shoes.
- h He went back to the sales assistant.
- i He put his jeans on again.

Exercise 9. Put the prepositions in each space in the sentences below if necessary:

- (a) Your jacket's undone. Button it
- (b) It was very warm. We took ... our coats.
- (c) Put ... your pullover. It's cold.
- (d) That's the man, ... the dark suit.
- (e) Hang your coat
- (f) Hang your coat ... the hook.
- (g) He took ... his shoes and put some slippers.

- (h) Anna's the girl ... the red dress.
- (i) She's only three. She can't do her coat ... by herself.
- (j) He rolled ... his sleeves and started work.
- (h) What size ... gloves do you wear?
- (i) Is your blouse made ... silk or ... nylon?
- (j) This frock suits ... her and she looks great today.
- (k) Go to the fitting-room and try ... the green suit.
- (l) I'm afraid the shirt is a bit loose ... me.
- (m) You must choose another belt. This one doesn't go ... your light dress.
- (n) The woman was made to believe that such shoes were ... fashion at that time.

Exercise 10. What's different? Find five things in the first picture that aren't in the second picture.



Exercise 11. Underline the most suitable word or phrase.

- a) At Harry's school, the children have to wear a special style/uniform.
- b) If we go to the Embassy ball we'll have to wear fashion/formal/polite clothes.
- c) I really like Jack's new dress/suit/trouser.
- d) In the summer I always wear shirts with short collars/cuffs/sleeves.
- e) Paul answered the door wearing his pyjamas and his dressing gown/nightdress.
- f) You get really dirty repairing a car unless you wear overalls/underwear.
- g) I didn't get wet in the rain because I put on my plastic mac/overcoat/tights.
- h) When it snows, Freda always wears a/an anorak/glove/scarf around her neck.
- i) David had to stop three times to tie up his small daughter's shoelaces/soles.
- j) My hands were cold so I put them in my pockets/turn-ups.
- k) The waitresses in this restaurant all wear white aprons/dungarees/robes.
- l) When Tom goes to a party he always wears a bow/butterfly/knot tie.

Exercise 12. Complete the word in each sentence. The first letter of each word is given to you.

- a) It's cold today. I'm going to put on a thick s..... .
- b) Graham usually wears a leather j..... .
- c) My trousers are falling down! I must buy a b..... .
- d) It's too hot for trousers. I'm going to wear my s.....
- e) Let's roll up our shirt s and start work.
- f) I can't wear these jeans! They are too t.....
- g) I bought this lovely s..... scarf in Japan.
- h) Don't forget to put your clothes away in the w.....

Exercise 13. Fill the gaps with suitable words. (More than one answer may be possible in some cases.)

1. She decided to wear a ... and a ... instead of a dress.
2. I tried on a ...; the jacket was fine but the ... were too short.
3. It was hot, so I took off my jacket and ..., and rolled up the sleeves of my... .
4. It was very embarrassing because I couldn't ... up the zip on my jeans.
5. I wanted to buy the jacket, but unfortunately the one I tried on wasn't big ... and they didn't have it in a bigger
6. I tried on a jumper, but the medium size was big and the small size wasn't big ...
7. Many women wear nighties in bed whereas most men and children wear
8. Blue ... are a kind of international uniform for young people.
9. It's too cold for Put your trousers on.
10. I need some new underwear. I'm going to buy three new ... today.
11. I've got a hole in my tights. I'll have to get a new
12. I've got a hole in my tights. I'll have to get some new
13. I must get my black shoes repaired. One ... is broken and both the... have holes in them.
14. Do up your... or you'll fall over.
15. There's someone at the door. You'd better put your... on before you open it.
16. Put your... on - this floor is very cold.
17. I've eaten too much - I'll have to loosen my... .
18. I've almost finished making my dress for the party but I've still got to take up the... and sew on some.

Exercise 14. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

Father and son

My next-door neighbour has a very unusual (1).....	APPEAR
He has long hair with a (2).....in the middle, and usually wears an old pair of jeans and a (3).....shirt.	PART STRIPE
His clothes are very (4) for working in a bank, but that is what he does! Unless he (5).....when he gets to work and changes his clothes! His clothes are usually filthy and I am sure he never washes them or takes them to the (6)	SUIT DRESS CLEAN
When he wears a coat it is always old and (7), and even on very cold days it is (8).....all down the front. The funny thing is that his son is very (9), always wears the latest styles, and never wears casual clothes, even on an (10) occasion.	WEAR BUTTON FASHION FORMAL

Exercise 15. Correct any errors in these sentences. Some sentences contain no errors.

- This shirt is too small, it is not my number.
- You have so many clothes. Why did you buy this cloth as well?
- What costume did you wear to the fancy dress party?
- Joan was dressed completely in white.
- I like your new trouser. How much was it?
- As far as I can see, the man in this photograph wears a suit.
- What are you wearing to the party this evening?
- You're soaked! Put out your clothes immediately!

Exercise 16. Choose the most suitable word to complete each sentence.

- My hands were so cold that I couldn't ... my coat buttons.
A) open B) remove C) put out D) undo
- Those trousers are far too big. Why don't you have them ...?
A) taken in B) let out C) taken up D) let in
- I don't think that purple shirt ... with your yellow skirt.
A) suits B) fits C) goes D) wears
- This jacket is the kind of thing I want. Can I ...?
A) wear it B) dress it C) take it off D) try it on
- You look really silly! Your pullover is on
A) upside down B) inside out C) round and round D) side by side
- I don't want a pattern. I prefer just a/an ... colour.
A) plain B) simple C) clear D) only
- You look hot in that coat. Why don't you ...?
A) put it on B) take it off C) put it away D) take it out

h) I went shopping today and bought a new winter

A) costume B) outfit C) suit D) clothing

B

a) If I wear a long-sleeved shirt, I usually ... the sleeves.

A) put up B) take up C) roll up D) get up

b) That skirt is very short. Why don't you have it ...?

A) left out B) set in C) let down D) taken round

c) The thief wore gloves so that his fingerprints didn't

A) give him in B) give him away C) give him out D) give him up

d) I can't walk in these high-heeled boots. I keep

A) falling off B) falling back C) falling out D) falling over

e) Why is my swimming costume too small? What are you ...?

A) seeing to B) getting at C) making up D) putting out

f) I'm ... money every week to buy a new sports jacket.

A) making for B) getting over C) putting aside D) turning in

g) Some of the young people in my town ... very strange haircuts!

A) go out with B) go in for C) go through with D) go back on

h) Before we choose a dress for you, let's ... all the shops.

A) look into B) look through C) look up D) look around

Exercise 17. Decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each space.

Choosing clothes

Are you one of the thousands of people who eagerly follow every new (1)that appears? Or are you one of those who go to the shops and just buys whatever they can find in their (2).....that (3)..... them? Or perhaps you order from a mail-order catalogue, and then have to send everything back because nothing (4).....? Whatever (5)..... of shopper you are, one thing is certain. Everyone finds (6)..... important. According to a recent survey, people spend more time either buying clothes, or thinking about buying them, or looking at them in shop (7), than they do on most other products, (8).....from food. And the reason is obvious. Clothes are an important part of our (9)..... At work, you may need to impress a customer, or persuade the boss that you know what you are doing, and clothes certainly help. (10)..... dressed people, so they say, get on in the world. And as far as attracting the opposite sex is concerned, clothes also play a vital role. If a friend who has been (11).....the same old jacket or the same old dress suddenly appears in the (12)..... fashion, you can be sure that romance is in the air. And apart from work and romance, there are the influences of sport, music and leisure on the way we (13)..... .So excuse me while I

(14).....on my tracksuit and training (15)..... I'm just dashing off for some fast window-shopping.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1) A appearance | B fashion | C uniform | D dress |
| 2) A place | B price | C size | D self |
| 3) A suits | B makes | C takes | D likes |
| 4) A sizes | B styles | C fits | D measures |
| 5) A means | B typical | C idea | D kind |
| 6) A out | B clothes | C dresses | D vests |
| 7) A centres | B sale | C times | D windows |
| 8) A apart | B or | C according | D taken |
| 9) A nowadays | B appearance | C looking | D events |
| 10) A well | B good | C best | D fancy |
| 11) A dressing | B putting on | C carrying | D wearing |
| 12) A last | B minute | C latest | D complete |
| 13) A clothes | B have | C dress | D go |
| 14) A put | B dress | C wear | D have |
| 15) A fit | B shoes | C tonight | D again |

Exercise 18. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. The saleswoman assured Eliza that the cut of the coat was fashionable. 2. Cut your coat according to your cloth. (proverb) 3. Take this coat. It's the latest fashion / style. 4. Such shoes are in fashion now. 5. This cut is out of fashion now. 6. Alice has gone shopping and is sure to buy a fashionable hat. 7. I don't like old-fashioned shoes. 8. The dress fits her like a glove. 9. She is going to buy a hat to match her new coat. 10. That cardigan does not go with a silk skirt. 11. The costume suits her. She looks smart in it. 12. What size shoes do you wear? What size gloves do you wear? 13. The frock's a bit loose on me. 14. The dress becomes you. It's a good fit. / The dress doesn't become you. It's a misfit. 15. The coat is tight on me. The shoes are tight on me. 16. This suit is for everyday wear. 17. He always wears a grey hat. 18. Kitty was wearing a lovely dress that night. 19. She was dressed in a light summer frock. / She had a light cotton frock on. 20. Does this material wear well? Shoes made of leather wear much longer. 21. Can I try on those grey shoes in the window? 22. She took off her shoes and put on her slippers. 23. Her black bag matches her shoes. 24. Red usually doesn't suit people with ginger hair.

Exercise 19. Translate into English.

A

1. Она нарядилась на вечеринку и выглядела очень элегантно.
2. Он переоделся из костюма в хлопковый домашний халат, который сочетался по цвету с его домашними туфлями.

3. Женщина примерила шерстяную юбку в полоску, но она плохо на ней сидела. Ей нужен был размер побольше.
4. На нем были мешковатые свободные штаны в клетку и облегающая поношенная тенниска без рукавов. Он выглядел достаточно неряшливо и старомодно.
5. Эта стильная кожаная куртка с замшевыми карманами и манжетами совсем не шла этому светловолосому парню.
6. Она выросла из этого шелкового платья в цветочек, и сандалии на низком каблуке были ей тесны.
7. Он расстегнул свое модное однотонное пальто, снял его и повесил на вешалку.

В

1. Какого размера перчатки вы носите? 2. Это платье вам идет. 3. Не примеряйте это платье. Вам не подходит цвет. 4. Идет ли мне эта блуза? 5. Я хочу купить туфли в тон своему новому костюму. 6. Это платье очень хорошо сидит на вас. 7. Эти сапоги не подходят к твоему пальто. 8. Эта блузка широка тебе. 9. Эти туфли мне малы (жмут). 10. Мне нужны дешевые туфли на каждый день.

Reading

Reading 1. You are Gorgeous!

Exercise 1. a) Who do you think is the most attractive man / woman in the world? Why?

b) Which is the best explanation of the saying 'Beauty is in the eye of the beholder':

- It is important to have beautiful eyes.
- Everyone has their own idea about beauty.
- Everyone wants to look at a beautiful person.

Exercise 2. Read the following text.

For many in the 1990s, supermodel Cindy Crawford was the perfect American dream girl: slim, tanned and natural-looking, with long, shiny hair. People described her as 'The Face of the Decade'.

But people have not always had the same ideas about beauty. Until the 1920s, suntans were for poor people, 'ladies' stayed out of the sun to keep their faces as pale as possible. In the times of Queen Elizabeth I of England, fashionable ladies even painted their faces with lead to make them whiter - a very dangerous habit, because lead is poisonous!

And people in the eighteenth century would not have thought much of Cindy Crawford's hair! Ladies in those days never went out without their wigs, which were so enormous (and dirty) that it was quite common to find mice living in them. As for the 'perfect beauties' painted by Rubens in the

seventeenth century, if they wanted to be supermodels today, they would need to spend months on a diet!

Ideas of beauty can be very different according to where you live in the world, too. For the Paduang tribe in South East Asia, traditionally, the most important sign of female beauty was a long neck. So at the age of five or six girls received their first neck ring, and each year they added new rings. By the time they were old enough to marry, their necks were about twenty-five centimetres long!

And what about the ideal man? If you ask people today to name an attractive man, most of them will mention someone like James Bond, Harrison Ford, or Denzel Washington: someone tall and athletic, brave and 'manly'.

In the eighteenth century however; 'manliness' was very different from what it is today. As well as wearing wigs, perfume and lots of make-up, a true gentleman showed that he had feelings by crying frequently in public. According to one story, when the British Prime Minister, Lord Spencer Percival, came to give King George IV some bad news, both men sat down and cried!

And even now, James Bond will not find it so easy to attract women if he visits the Dinka tribe of Sudan. They have always believed in the saying that 'big is beautiful'. Traditionally, each year, men compete to win the title of 'the fattest man'. The winner is sure to find a wife quickly: for a Dinka woman, if a man is fat, it is also a sign that he is rich and powerful!

Exercise 3. Which of the statements from the text are true?

- a) Pale skin was more popular than tanned skin until the twentieth century.
- b) Elizabethan make-up was not very safe.
- c) In the eighteenth century most fashionable ladies liked mice.
- d) Ladies in Rubens' times probably never went on diets.
- e) If Paduang women didn't have a long neck, they couldn't get married.
- f) People in the eighteenth century thought that it was OK for men to cry.
- g) Dinka women from Sudan think that thin men are very ugly.

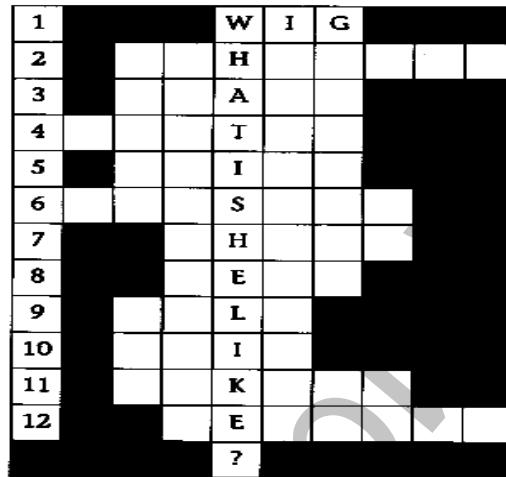
Exercise 4. Find English equivalents for the following in the text and reproduce the situations with them:

девушка мечты; ядовитый свинец; огромный парик; сидеть месяцами на диете; представление о красоте; признак женской красоты; плакать на публике; завоевать звание.

Exercise 5. Using the words from the text, do the crossword puzzle.

- 1 Eighteenth-century ladies and men often wore a ... on their head. (3 letters)
- 2 Physically strong and good at sport. (8 letters)
- 3 You are this if you have a lot of courage. (5 letters)
- 4 When your skin goes brown because of the sun, you have.... (6 letters)

- 5 In the times of Queen Elizabeth I, fashionable ladies wanted their faces to be this colour! (5 letters)
- 6 You describe someone who wears good clothes as well-... (7 letters)
- 7 Using a good shampoo can help you to have ... hair! (5 letters)
- 8 It's between your head and your shoulders! (4 letters)
- 9 For skin colour, the opposite of dark. (4 letters)
- 10 Thin, in an attractive way. (4 letters)
- 11 People put this on their face to look more attractive. (4 letters+2 letters)
- 12 People put this liquid on their skin: it has a pleasant smell. (7 letters)

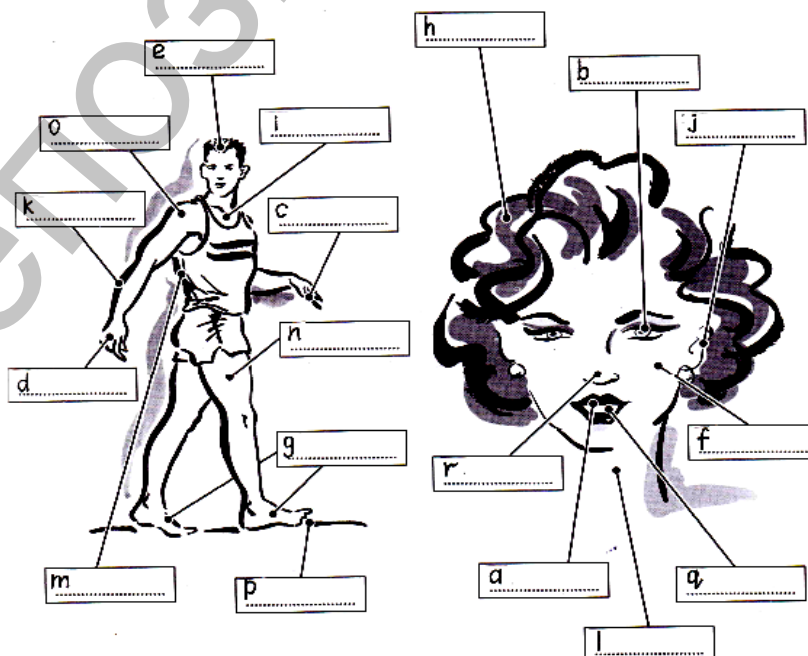


Listening

Listening 1. Parts of the face and body

(Cutting Edge pre-intermediate (workbook), module 5)

Exercise. Listen to the words on the tape and match them with the pictures a-r.



Listening 2. Description of People.

(Learning to Listen, unit 2, Out-of-Class Listening 1)

Exercise. a) Listen to the descriptions of the four people and fill in the details in the table below.

Name				
Age				
Face				
Complexion				
Hair				
Eyes				
Features				
General impression				

b) Listen to the tape and answer the questions:

- What is the relation between Clare and Carol?
- Why does the middle-aged man have a sallow complexion?
- What do you notice first about a square sort of face?
- David has a tanned complexion, doesn't he?

Listening 3. Recognizing people.

(Listen Carefully, unit 8, activity 1)

Exercise. You will hear people describing someone they are looking for at the party. Listen and number the people correctly.



Speaking

Exercise 1. Describe the faces and point their typical features.



a



b



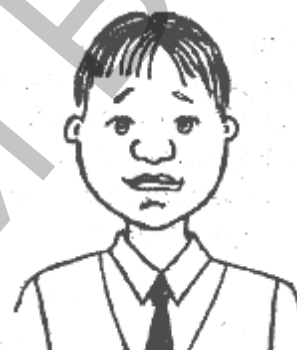
c



d

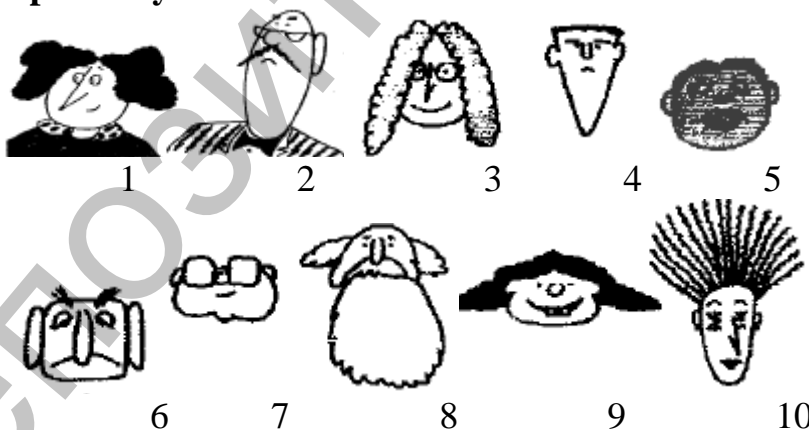


e



f

Exercise 2. a) Choose a picture and describe it. Ask your group mates to guess which picture you have chosen.



b) Describe your group mate and let the rest students guess who it is.

Exercise 3. Show your partner a picture of your mother (father, sister, friend, etc.) and describe their appearances using the following texts as models.

A

1. My sister Jane is a pretty girl of twenty. She is rather thin and looks like a teenager. She's got dark brown eyes and brown hair. Her face is round. She looks very much like her mother.

2. My grandmother is an elderly person. She is over seventy but she doesn't look it. She has aged quite well. She's got grey hair and blue eyes. She is rather stout. She's got a kind smile.
3. My cousin John is 22. He is a handsome fellow with an oval face, fair hair and grey eyes. He is tall and slim. Girls think a lot of him.
4. My mother is in her early forties. I must say, she looks young for her age. She is not very tall. She has a good figure and beautiful wavy hair. I like her brown eyes, her soft voice and the way she smiles. We are very alike.

B

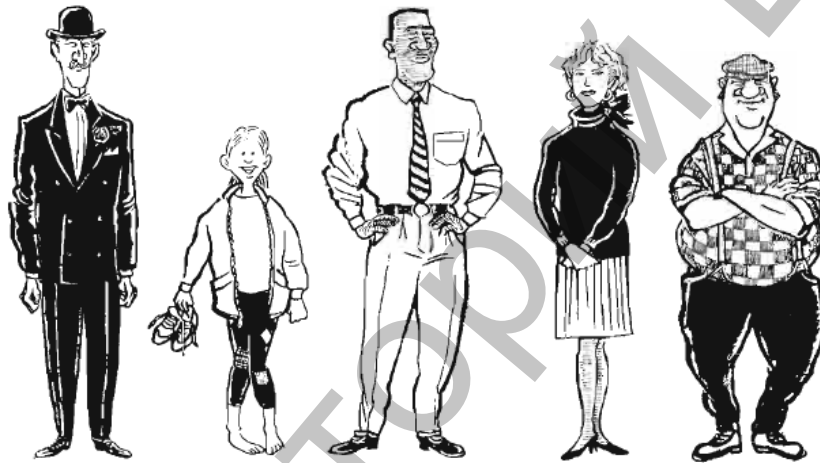
My brother David is 22 years old. He is of medium height and build, is a bit stocky, but strong with it. He has long, curly fair hair. It is fashionable in Britain at the moment for men to grow their hair. His nearly reaches his shoulders. My mother is always telling him to get it cut. He doesn't take much care over his appearance so he often looks quite scruffy. He hates having to wear a tie for work. When he's at home he wears comfortable clothes such as T-shirts and jeans. He doesn't care very much what he looks like.

My second brother James is much taller - he towers above me, even though he is only 15. He does quite a lot of sport so he's quite strong and has well developed muscles. He has straight brown hair which refuses to lie flat and is always sticking up. He has bluish-grey eyes and a little nose. He is clever and quiet and spends a lot of time at his computer. People sometimes think that he is morose & sullen but I don't think that's the case - he just prefers to think rather than to talk. When he does talk he has a deep voice. He doesn't pronounce his words very clearly, but just mutters them - he can't be bothered to speak clearly. This is typical of boys of his age I think.

My mother turned 50 this year, although she doesn't look it. She has aged quite well I think. Only now she is beginning to show signs of old age - her hair started to go grey and her skin is drier. She is also thinner - she used to have a tendency to put on weight. She is usually well dressed. She is the sort of person who always looks quite smart - I'm the exact opposite - it doesn't matter how much time, money and energy I devote to my appearance, I usually look scruffy. Even if I leave home looking good, by the time I reach my destination I look a mess - my things are splashed, my hem has come down and I generally look untidy as if I'd never bothered.

My father is quite short and a bit plump. I take after my father's side of the family. My father is nearly bald and the hair that remains is grey. He wears sensible, practical clothes most of the time, but for work he has to look smarter so he wears a suit and a tie. He has a grey and blue suit which I think looks good on him. When he puts his glasses on and he wears these suits, he looks every inch a teacher. My father is not a pleasant man. He gets angry and loses his temper quite often.

Exercise 4. Describe in as much detail as possible what the people in the pictures are wearing.



Exercise 5. Describe:

- the appearance of a famous actor, singer, politician, etc.;
- the criminal to a detective;
- your ideal of a man / woman.

Writing

Exercise 1. Paul Sanders is going on a business trip to London. This is his letter to Mr. Bell, a person who is going to meet Paul in London at the station.

Dear Mr Bell,

I am arriving at the station, London, at 11.37 a.m. next Tuesday, September 17th. Can you meet me?

I am sorry that I don't send a photograph, but here is my description: I am 22, quite short with dark hair and a small beard. I have got blue eyes. I will be wearing

a dark green sweater and light grey trousers and black shoes.

I look forward to seeing you. Yours sincerely, Paul Sanders.

Imagine that you are going on a holiday or a business trip to another country. Write a letter to a person you don't know, asking to meet you at the station and giving a description of yourself. In the description follow this order: height; build; age; hair; eyes; face; complexion; special features.

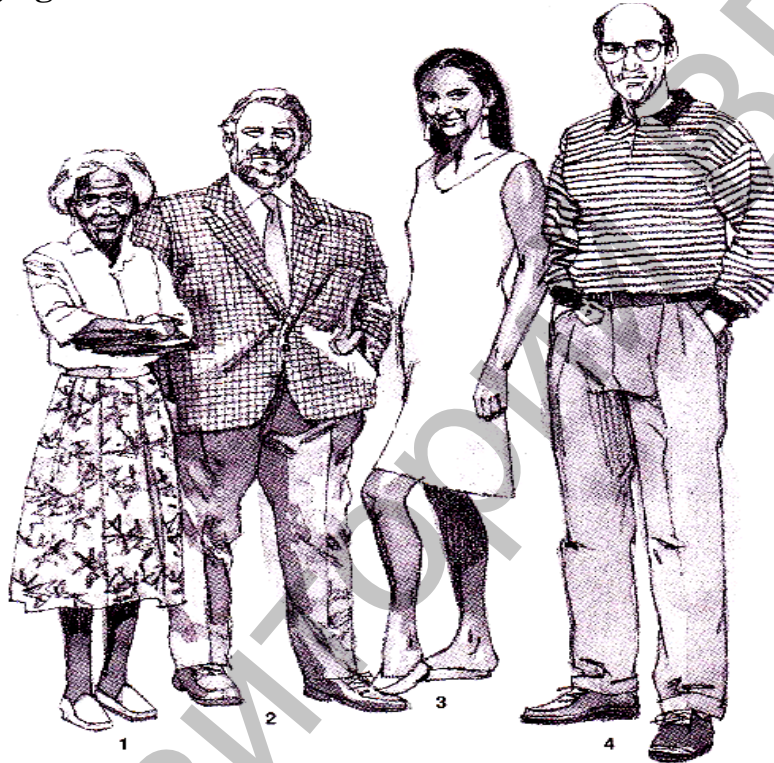
Exercise 2. Choose any person in this picture and give a detailed description in writing.



Exercise 3. Give a detailed description of the members of this family. Use the following texts as the models:

My father has a **round face**, with **chubby cheeks** and a **droopy moustache**. My mother has a more **pointed face** and a **straight nose**. My younger sister is more like my father. She has an **oval face** and an **upturned nose**. My elder sister is like a model. She has a **slim figure** and a **slender waist**. She has a **lovely complexion** and **beautiful sleek, shoulder-length hair**, and she's always **immaculately groomed**. I feel so ordinary next to her – I've got **coarse hair** and rather **broad hips**, but she always says I look nice.

My father and my two older brothers are all **well-built** with **broad shoulders**. My father is **going bald** but he still has a very **youthful appearance** for someone who is over forty. My brothers both have **thick hair** and **bushy eyebrows**. My younger brother is only two – he’s just a **tiny tot**, but he’s very cute. My mother’s side of the family mostly have **dark hair** – in fact my mother had **jet-black hair** when she was younger, before she **went grey** – but on my father’s side some have **fair hair** and some have **ginger hair**.



Section B. Character

Active Words

to admire smb for smth
to appreciate smth
to be easy/difficult/hard to deal with/to talk to/to work for
to be a good mixer
to be happy to do smth
to be a person of strong/weak character
to be the kind of person you like at first sight
to get along/on with smb
to be pleased with smb (smth)
to be satisfied with smth
to be a sunny soul
to have a bunch of bad habits

to have a lot of faults
to have common sense
to have good/bad qualities
to have a sense of humour
to keep one's promise/word
to make friends
to make smb angry/happy/sad
to manage smb/smth
to tell lies
to be fond of smth / doing smth
to be keen on smth
to adore smb
to be devoted to
to be crazy about smb / smth
to be good at smth /at doing smth
to be lazy about smth /doing smth
to get rid of smth
to give up smth
to like / dislike / hate doing / to do smth
to like the way one behaves
to behave oneself
to put smb out of temper
to lose one's temper / to fly (get) into a temper
to control / to hold / to keep one's temper
to have a high (low) opinion of smb
to have a way with smb

Traits of Character

(merits, faults, shortcomings, virtues, sins)

good nature – ill nature
active – passive
cheerful, lively – gloomy, moody, grim, sullen, morose
glad, joyful – sad, sorrowful
neat – sloppy
obedient – disobedient
serious – easy-going
boastful – modest
sensitive – callous
reasonable – unreasonable
broad-minded – narrow-minded
quick – slow
clever, bright, intelligent, wise, witty – silly, stupid, dull
deep – shallow

considerate – inconsiderate
coward – brave, bold, courageous
obstinate, stubborn – submissive
strong-willed – weak-willed
sly, cunning – simple-hearted, simple-minded
patient – impatient
respectful – disrespectful
tolerant – intolerant
fair – unfair
careful – careless, carefree
honest – dishonest
sociable, talkative, communicative – reserved
reliable – unreliable
sympathetic, warm-hearted – indifferent
harsh – tender
soft – strict
calm, quiet, placid – nervous, anxious
fearful – fearless
boring, dull – witty, amusing
cruel, wicked – kind, genial
rude – gentle
friendly, amiable – hostile
mean, scoundrel – noble, honourable
selfish – selfless
hopeful – hopeless
hot – cool
moral – immoral
polite, courteous – impolite
tactful – tactless
hot-tempered – composed, well-balanced
submissive – persistent
resolute – irresolute
well-mannered – ill-mannered
in a good mood, in high spirits – in a bad mood, in low spirits
well-bred – ill-bred
pleased – displeased
disappointed – inspired
concerned – unconcerned
skilled – unskilled
well-read – ill-read, ignorant
well-behaved – ill-behaved
greedy, stingy, scrooge, wasteful – thrifty, generous, open-hearted
responsible – irresponsible

demanding, exacting – undemanding
 hard-working, industrious, workaholic – lazy, idle
 happy – unhappy, miserable
 merciful – merciless
 mediocre, ordinary – talented, gifted
 straightforward – shy, timid
 superior – inferior

HERE ADD SOME MORE ADJECTIVES YOU COME ACROSS:

vivacious	self-denying	concentrated
sleepyhead	self-disciplined	frustrated, distressed
slowpoke	villain	passionate
bore, nuisance	independent	low and sad
irritable	suspicious	seek and tired
ambitious	naughty	dominant, bossy
arrogant, haughty	firm	pushy
capricious	dignified	envious, jealous
self-assured	awkward	inquisitive
self-critical	dedicated	

Vocabulary Exercises

Exercise 1. Which five characteristics do you think are the most important in a friend? Which five characteristics do you dislike most in your partner?

Model: I respect (hate) / like (dislike)people.

Exercise 2. Can you complete each of these word forks?

1. self-.....; 2. -tempered; 3. -minded

Exercise 3. Give Russian / English equivalents to the following:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. brave | 1. мудрый |
| 2. industrious | 2. туповатый |
| 3. persistent | 3. медлительный |
| 4. selfish | 4. сдержанный |
| 5. greedy | 5. тщеславный |
| 6. frank | 6. простодушный |
| 7. unfair | 7. лицемерный |

8. reasonable
9. awkward
10. cheerful
11. tactful
12. coward
13. witty
14. chatter-box
15. modest
16. ill-mannered
17. energetic
18. shy
19. independent
20. lazy

8. вспыльчивый
9. грубый
10. хвастливый
11. вежливый
12. хитрый
13. умный
14. самоуверенный
15. надежный
16. добрый
17. уступчивый
18. добродушный
19. мрачный
20. пунктуальный

Exercise 4. Give as many opposites and synonyms as you can:

- cheerful
- stupid
- patient
- aggressive
- mean
- courageous
- evil
- hard-working
- honest
- ill-bred

Exercise 5. Study your topical vocabulary and fill in the table:

Qualities	Positive traits	Negative traits
1. Man and his Intellect		
2. Man and his Character		
3. Man and Other People		
4. Man and his Work		
5. Man and his Property		
6. Man and his Emotions		

Exercise 6. What do we call a person who

- ... likes to talk with other people?
- ... hates to communicate?
- ... looks on the bright side of things?
- ... looks on the black side of things?
- ... gives his or her last to other?
- ... has a high opinion of himself or herself?
- ... easily flies into a rage?
- ... tells the truth to others?
- ... is practical in approach to life?

- ...never praises himself or herself?
- ... never loses his or her temper?
- ... cheats other people?
- ... is dreamy in approach to life?
- ... never lends you money?
- ... lacks good manners?
- ... never keeps his or her word?
- ... cannot take himself or herself in hand?
- ... pokes his or her nose into smb's business?
- ... thinks only of himself or herself?

Exercise 7. What do you call a person who says:

1. Ladies first!
2. I can't control myself when I should keep quiet.
3. I'm not easily put off if I have made up my mind.
4. I don't care for him. He is inferior to me, you know.
5. Whatever she may say I won't lose my temper.
6. Darling! I never grudge you anything, be it clothes, money, a car.
7. I always feel sorry for people who are in trouble.
8. I just love cucumbers with milk, Picasso's paintings and freckled faces.
9. I have got used to ten hours work every day.
10. I prefer to be in the company of other people and have a chat with them.
11. Whatever you may ask me to do for you, I will do it. Whatever you may say, I will forgive you.

Exercise 8. Change the sentences into their opposites:

1. Ann is very modest and a bit shy.
2. Paul is absolutely weak-willed.
3. Maria is ill-mannered.
4. Peter is pretty sociable.
5. Helen is very sensitive.
6. Susan is extremely jealous of her husband.
7. Steven is fantastically rude to his wife.
8. Victoria is a good mixer.
9. Barbara is generous.
10. Erwin is very shrewd.
11. Bill is just hot-tempered.
12. Mark is quite sensible.
13. Jane is pretty serious.

Exercise 9. Fill in the words in their proper places.

lazy	clever	stupid	greedy (2)	polite (2)
sociable (2)	selfish	happy	generous	hard-working
ambitious	imaginative	brave	proud	stubborn
grateful	kind	snobbish	tolerant	

Репозиторий ВГУ

1. He is always interested only in himself. He is
2. She is fond of going to the parties and meeting her friends. She has a lot of them. She is very
3. He dislikes spending money and never buys any ice-cream, sweets or juice. He is
4. She is fond of learning and always passes her exams well. She is ... and
5. He prefers to spend the whole day in bed watching TV. He is
6. Mary will never forget to say "Thank you" and "Please". She is a very ... girl.
7. She is always smiling and says she is fond of life. She is really
8. He doesn't want to study. He can't even write the word "newspaper" correctly. He is
9. She is always helping people. She is
10. I think I'll stay here on my own, I'm not feeling very ... today.
11. Diana wants to get to the top in her company. She is very
12. It's not ... to stare at people and say nothing!
13. I think you have to be very ... to write a novel.
14. Thank you for helping me. It was very ... of you.
15. Peter refuses to change his mind, although he is wrong. He's so
16. It was very ... of Sheila to put out the fire on her own.
17. Our neighbours look down on us. They are a bit
18. Don't eat all the cakes! You really are becoming ... !
19. If you lend me the money, I'll be very
20. I am very ... of my new motorbike.
21. My parents don't mind my crazy hairstyle. They are very

Exercise 10. Choose the correct word in each sentence.

1. When her bicycle was stolen, Jill became extremely angry/nervous.
2. Peter felt ashamed/embarrassed when he had to make a speech.
3. I always write thank-you letters, just to be gentle/polite.
4. You never do anything to help me! You're so lazy/tired.
5. Penny never does anything silly. She's very sensible/sensitive.
6. The children had to stay in the house all day and felt bored/tired.
7. Jackie doesn't worry about anything and is always cheerful/ sympathetic.
8. Mr. Jackson is very annoyed/bad-tempered and often shouts at people.
9. When he heard about the accident, Alan was very damaged/upset.
10. I've got an important exam tomorrow and I'm a bit jealous/nervous.
11. Please don't push. It's very bad-tempered/rude/unsympathetic.
12. Jack hates spending money. He's rather frank/greedy/mean.
13. Our teacher is very proud/strict/tolerant and won't let us talk in class.
14. Helen never does her homework. She is rather gentle/lazy/reliable.
15. I didn't talk to anyone at the party because I felt ambitious/lonely/shy.

16. When Harry saw his girlfriend dancing with Paul he felt jealous/
selfish/sentimental.
17. I don't like people who are noisy and aggressive/courageous/sociable.
18. Thanks for bringing us a present. It was very adorable/grateful/
thoughtful of you.
19. Teresa never gets angry with the children. She is very brave/patient/
pleasant.
20. Tom always pays for everyone when we go out. He's so cheerful/
generous/honest.

Exercise 11. Use suitable words with negative prefixes.

1. You can't rely on Joe. He's very _____.
2. Carla has very little patience. She's very _____.
3. Jack shows no interest in this subject. He's _____.
4. Pat is lacking in honesty. She's _____.
5. Bill doesn't act like a friend. He's _____.
6. Lisa doesn't have much experience of this work. She's _____.
7. Peter never acts politely. He's _____.
8. The official did not help us very much. She was _____.
9. Graham doesn't consider other people. He's _____.
10. Ann refused to co-operate with the police. She was _____.

Exercise 12. Complete the sentences.

Model: You always arrive on time. – You are punctual.

- a) You always arrive on time.....
- b) You are always happy.....
- c) You do what you say you will do.
- d) You say exactly what you think.....
- e) You don't think about the needs of others.....
- f) You have a strong wish to get what you want.....
- g) You are unkind, or not willing to spend money.....
- h) You easily become angry with others.....
- i) You think about the needs of others.....
- j) You tell the truth and obey the law.
- k) You understand the feelings of others.....
- l) You try to avoid work if you can.....

Exercise 13. Choose five or six adjectives which you think best describe either your own or a friend's character. How do you or your friend demonstrate these characteristics?

Model: Sociable - I am sociable because I love being with other people.

How do you see yourself? Think about your own character and personality. Do you have any particular weaknesses or strengths? Write down three things about your character which you think are good and three things which you think are not so good. Then compare your list with a partner's. Do you have much in common?

Exercise 14. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

Jack's real character

How easy is it to understand another person's character?

My friend Jack, was once a rather (1)person. He was ANNOY
always getting into trouble at school because he was so (2) OBEY
In class he was very (3).....and never stopped making TALK
jokes. The teachers all told him he was (4).....because POLITE
he interrupted them. When I met him he was very (5) FRIEND
and didn't want to talk to me at all. People told me that he
stole things, and that he was (6)..... His school work HONEST
was terrible. He didn't take any (7) in his writing, he PROUD
never spent enough time doing his homework, and he
was not at all (8).....One day he saw a gang of boys CONSCIENCE
attacking an old man. Jack hated (9) and he fought VIOLENT
them all until they ran away. He was awarded a medal
for (10)..... After that, people changed their minds BRAVE
about him.

Exercise 15. Decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each space.

Ann Johnson - A confidential report

Ann Johnson has worked at this college for three years. She is a (1).....
employee, and (2).....on well with the other members of the
department. We have all found her to be an excellent (3).....
She has always been (4).....for her lessons, and is an extremely
(5).....member of staff who is able to work independently. I can always
(6).....on her to organize the end of term play, and she has put on some
extremely (7).....productions. Her students often tell me how
(8).....she is, always ready with a smile, and she has been very
(9).....to many of them. In (10).....she is not very talkative and seems
rather (11).....at first, and might not show her true (12).....
in an interview. Her work is excellent, and she is (13).....to
succeed. She is also quite (14)....., and has applied for two other
positions as Director of Studies. I think that you can count
(15).....Ann to make your school a success, and I recommend her for
the post of Director.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1) A conscientious | B conscience | C consciousness | D conscious |
| 2) A goes | B carries | C gets | D likes |
| 3) A colleague | B adult | C employer | D fellow |
| 4) A times | B late | C hourly | D punctual |
| 5) A greedy | B reliable | C stubborn | D lazy |
| 6) A request | B concentrate | C take | D rely |
| 7) A imaginary | B imagination | C imaginative | D imagined |
| 8) A tempered | B cheerful | C frank | D proud |
| 9) A kind | B aggressive | C polite | D mean |
| 10) A first | B times | C usual | D private |
| 11) A but | B shy | C however | D alone |
| 12) A person | B behaviour | C character | D part |
| 13) A used | B determined | C had | D supposed |
| 14) A obedient | B disappointed | C grateful | D ambitious |
| 15) A on | B for | C with | D to |

Exercise 16. Are we the kind of people we are because of the time of the year we were born? Read your own star sign (sign of the Zodiac) description and those of other people you know. Discuss with your partner if these descriptions are accurate or not, whether you agree with them or not. Give your grounds.

Aquarius (January 20 - February 18)

You are practical and realistic about what is important in life - you have your feet firmly on the ground. You are intelligent and love thinking up new ideas but you sometimes *have a memory like a sieve*. Once you have made a promise, you never go back on it. You like change, and often wear outrageous clothes that make you stand out in a crowd. Often anti-conformists. Like experimenting with things and people. Deeply interested in sport and politics. Believe in violent political changes but leave violence to others. Tolerant and open-minded. Live in the future. Fond of crowds. Have lots of friends but unstable in relationships. Sign of genius or madness.

CHILDREN: Sensitive, often dreamy and absent-minded. Full of contradictions.

Pisces (February 19 - March 20)

You are sensitive, imaginative and creative, but also very emotional -your heart rules your head. You are not ambitious or materialistic and often have your own head in the clouds. You are indecisive because you don't always *know your own mind*, but you are good at *putting yourself in other people's shoes*. Sensitive, emotional, vulnerable, imaginative, artistic. Can't face the horrible sides of our world, seek refuge in dreams. Prone to depression and nightmares. Full of compassion for all human beings including the misfits of society – but also prone to self-pity.

CHILDREN: Live in a world of fantasy. Cry frequently. Often find it difficult to conform to other people's rules, especially at school. Need protection.

Aries (March 21 - April 20)

You are a born leader and like to dominate people. You are very active and rather impulsive, so you tend to do things *on the spur of the moment*. You lose your

temper very easily, but you get over it quickly and can be quite charming. You're not good at following other people's advice, but you're quick to give advice to them. Full of energy, domineering, often bad tempered. Very self-centred ("Me first") but also very warm, generous and sensitive. Enjoy making people happy.

CHILDREN: Vivid imagination, dreamy and sentimental but practical too. Fiery nature.

Taurus (April 21 - May 20)

You are practical, reliable, and determined. You *have a mind of your own* so it is very difficult to make you do something you don't want to. This means you can be stubborn at times. You like the security that comes from routine so you don't like change. You are loyal and generous to your friends and will stand by them whenever possible. Healthy, passive and peaceful. Seldom worry. Stubborn and hardworking. Devoted to home, family and friends. Like money and making money. Impressed by "bigness".

CHILDREN: Mature and emotionally stable. Usually well-behaved (if you don't tease them). Excellent powers of concentration at school. Slow to learn but good memory.

Gemini (May 21 - June 20)

You are intelligent, interested in everything, and have an excellent general knowledge. You think and talk fast and you are full of restless energy. You are versatile and good at doing several things at the same time. You have a strong sense of humour and often *have your friends in stitches*. You are sociable, get bored easily and love change. Clever and witty. Great talkers. Hate monotony. Often change opinions.

CHILDREN: Get into everything, never quite satisfied with what they have. Very active but lack persistence and patience.

Cancer (June 21 - July 21)

You are very sensitive and easily hurt. If someone says an unkind word to you, you *take it to heart*, but you are also very forgiving. Your family life is very important to you. You are sincere in love, but often take things too seriously. You are a loyal friend and have a good memory, but you can be moody sometimes. Like good joke and attracting attention but also depressive and moody. Individualists. Revere the past, suspect what's new, anxious about the future.

CHILDREN: Often unhappy. Need more affection than anybody else.

Leo (July 22-August 21)

You have a confident and attractive personality, but you tend to be proud. You like to be *in the public eye* and you are easily flattered. You love the sun and are very generous - indeed, you *have a heart of gold*. You like to organize other people, and you are quick to stand up for someone who you think is being attacked. Proud and bossy. Rule everybody. Good organizers. Never lean on others, prefer to be leaned on. Fond of luxury. Either meticulously clean or careless and sloppy. Live passionate lives. Very generous, good at forgiving.

CHILDREN: Show off a lot. Sense of justice. Turbulent love-affairs.

Virgo (August 22 - September 21)

You are quiet and shy and don't like crowds. You tend to be a loner and *keep yourself to yourself*. You are a perfectionist - you want everybody and everything to be perfect and this makes it difficult for people to live up to your high standards. You prefer to play a supporting role at work and in relationships. Perfectionists. Great worriers. Often criticize others but hate being criticized. Like truth, punctuality, order, economy. Dislike vulgarity, dirt, idleness, and excessive sentiment.

CHILDREN: Hardworking, obedient pupils. Practical minds.

Libra (September 22 - October 22)

You are sympathetic, tolerant and a good listener, so when a friend needs *a shoulder to cry* on, they turn to you. Love is important for you and you are always falling for people. However, you are indecisive. You spend a long time weighing up all the possibilities before you make up your mind. Good-natured and pleasant. Alternately active and lazy. Always arguing. Hate making decisions. Never eccentric. Like books.

CHILDREN: A delight to their teachers: fond of discussion and beauty, inquiring minds.

Scorpio (October 23 - November 21)

You have strong likes and dislikes and tend to *see things in black and white*. As a result, you tend to make instant judgement and rarely change your mind about things or people. You are ambitious, but love is more important to you than success. You are very secretive and hide your true feelings. If you are hurt you always take revenge. Not easily afraid. Brave, sometimes violet. Resentful, very possessive. Extremists. Passionately concerned with sex or religion.

CHILDREN: Don't easily compromise, like to win. Blunt speech. Fascinated by the forbidden.

Sagittarius (November 22 - December 20)

You are friendly, extrovert, and outspoken. You rebel against authority and have a tendency to *speak your mind* when it would be better to remain silent. You hate pretence and deception. You are intelligent and like to show off your knowledge to other people. You love travel and danger and you have a hot temper. Extroverts, talkative and forward. Cheerful and optimistic. Restless and impulsive. Not tactful. Attracted to risks and danger. Love sport and travelling.

CHILDREN: Good mixers. Honest. Curious. Clumsy. Fight for causes.

Capricorn (December 21 - January 19)

You are a strong-minded person who takes life and work very seriously. Your talent and determination make you successful and you usually *get to the top*. In your relationships you are faithful and loyal, but you are also possessive and like to be in control. You are very cautious and tend to bottle up your feelings rather than release them. Respects authority, elders and ancestors. Deep sense of duty. Wise and controlled. Shy and uncertain, but climb high in the social scale (slowly but surely).

CHILDREN: Introverts. Polite, serious and mature. Conformists. Preference for home life. Slow at school but methodical.

Exercise 17. Try to match the descriptions with proper adjectives.

Aries:

You won't find him in the corner at the party.*outgoing*

That's her doing the can-can on the table.

She has no problems.

He never frowns.

She tells no lies.

He has few secrets.

He'll tell you if he doesn't like your make-up.

She'll tell you if she doesn't like your after-shave.

He's the person to ask for that five pounds you are owed.

Taurus:

He knows what he wants and he usually gets it.

She never gives up without a fight.

He knows he's good.

She knows she's as good.

She likes to be the boss, the one on top.

He wants to be even bigger and better - the best and expects high standards of performance from others.

He works 18 hours a day, jogs, and plays squash.

She hates to lose, in business or at tiddlywinks.

Gemini:

She thinks she's good.

He thinks he's superior to everyone.

'As the most experienced and sensible person present, I...'

'Of course, I could have beaten him even more easily, but I wanted to give him a chance.'

She won't share her presents with her sister.

He spends half the day in front of the mirror.

She thinks the whole world revolves around her.

He thinks he's the centre of the universe.

She looks down on anyone who hasn't got a heated indoor swimming pool at home.

Cancer:

She seems to enjoy finding fault with others.

He'll take off marks if you don't dot your i's.

She can only ever see one side of things.

He always likes the fat taken off his bacon.

He's like a donkey.

She's like a mule.

He loves money, loves having 'things'.

Oh yes, he'll help you - if you make it worth his while.

She never lets her husband out of her sight.

Leo:

You never know what he's going to do.

He never knows what he's going to do.

There are two things I don't like about her - her face!
Be careful what he's saying about you behind your back.
Be careful what she's doing while your back is turned.
He behaves like the weather in April.
She behaves like the proverbial primadonna.
He says what I want to hear, not what he thinks.
He never does all the things he says he'll do.

Virgo:

Other people's points of view always impress him.
She'd believe you if you told her pizzas grew on trees.
She lacks will-power.
He lacks courage.
He doesn't do much - he just sits back and watches.
She'll do what she's told.
You never know what he's thinking.
'It was an honour just to be on the same court as McEnroe. How I beat him 6-0, 6-0, 6-0? It was just luck.'

Libra:

He uses his common sense.
She never does silly things under pressure.
She's like the Libran symbol of the scales.
She'd solve all the problems on a desert island, and nothing would upset her.
He'd be a good judge or referee.
She's got both feet on the ground and is really down-to-earth.
His heart rarely rules his head.
I think, therefore I am. That's my approach.

Scorpio:

Keep out of her way when she loses her temper.
He's always the first one to put his fists up, and he's quick to use them - to the full.
He may even add a boot or two for good measure.
She won't let anything stand in her way.
He has no principles about hurting other people.
He almost seems to enjoy causing trouble.
She's a strong believer in an eye for an eye, and a tooth - or, in her case, teeth - for a tooth.

Sagittarius:

Those with some Latin blood in their veins.
They are fiery and emotional.
She's not afraid to go mountain climbing, or to join a mountain rescue team.
He wants to go to wild and unexplored places.
They're vivacious, like champagne bubbles.
She puts her heart and soul into her profession."
On the sinking ship, the dog never left its master's side.
These friends do not desert you in a crisis.

Capricorn:

He'd always stop to help a disabled person across the road.
That's her on the beach wiping oil off the sea-birds' feathers.
She wouldn't hurt a fly. He leaves \$10 tips.
He wouldn't mind if she dyed her hair green.
She lets him sleep when he gets back from a hard day's work.
He defends her in any argument.
She kisses him on the cheek every minute or so.
She always sends a card on her parents' anniversary.

Aquarius:

If she likes you, she'll fling her arms around you and say so.
He jumps into the bath without testing the water.
Lose your way with her in the car? You'd better not!
He's constantly like a child on Christmas Eve.
He's a typical 'angry young man'.
She's Trotsky, Castro and Guevara all rolled into one.
He's got a memory like a sieve.
He thought a double brandy would help the baby sleep.
If she gets an idea in her head, there's no stopping her.

Pisces:

There she is, over there, on her own in the corner.
He's afraid that the whole world is looking at him.
She peeps round her front door like a mouse.
He's always the last to introduce himself.
Be careful not to upset her. It's easily done.
He can see beauty in a pile of rubbish.
He can then turn the pile of rubbish into a work of art.
I was moved to tears by the beauty of his sculpture.
He doesn't know who he is, where he is, what to do or why.

Exercise 18. a) Read through the list of qualities and mark:

1. the characteristics with various suffixes (-able, -less, etc.);
2. the characteristics with various prefixes (un-, dis-, etc.);
3. compound characteristics (small-minded, old-fashioned, etc.)

Chinese horoscope

The Rat <i>aggressive</i>	The Ox <i>hard-working</i>	The Tiger <i>smiling</i>	The Rabbit <i>cautious</i>	The Dragon <i>showy</i>	The Snake <i>wise</i>
energetic	lonely	magnetic	clever	artistic	sympathetic
jolly	leaders	lucky	hospitable	enthusiastic	lucky
charming	strong	strong	sociable	lucky	sophisticated
sociable	proud	honourable	friendly	healthy	calm
humorous	reserved	leaders	sensitive	generous	decisive
generous	methodical	liberal-minded	ambitious	sentimental	attractive

intellectual	original	passionate	careful	successful	philosophical
sentimental	eloquent	courageous		independent	elegant
honest	patient	generous			compassionate
persistent	silent				

greedy	rigid	vain	private	demanding	lazy
small-minded	bad losers	rash	timid	irritable	possessive
gamblers	authoritarian	disobedient	thin-skinned	stubborn	tight-fisted
power-hungry	conventional	undisciplined	old-fashioned	discontented	bad losers
tiresome	jealous	argumentative	hypochondriac	willful	changeable
destructive	stubborn	rebellious	squeamish	loud-mouthed	vengeful
suspicious	slow				extravagant

The Horse <i>gifted</i>	The Goat <i>gentle</i>	The Monkey <i>merry</i>	The Rooster <i>proud</i>	The Dog <i>faithful</i>	The Pig <i>scrupulous</i>
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

athletic	artistic	enthusiastic	enthusiastic	loyal	loyal
charming	peace-loving	witty	stylish	noble	sincere
quick-witted	sweet-natured	good in business	popular	modest	honest
hard-working	intelligent	inventive	lively	devoted	loving
entertaining	lovable	clever	amusing	prosperous	sociable
powerful	creative	fascinating	generous	courageous	sensitive
skilful	inventive	passionate	adventurous	respectable	sensual
cheerful	amorous	youthful	industrious	selfless	truthful
eloquent	tasteful	very intelligent	conservative	dutiful	peaceful
independent			courageous	intelligent	intelligent

weak	insecure	vain	pompous	introverted	naive
unfeeling	pessimistic	adolescent	pedantic	cynical	epicurean
hot-headed	unpunctual	unfaithful	short-sighted	critical	insecure
selfish	undisciplined	untruthful	boastful	moralizing	gullible
ruthless	dissatisfied	untrustworthy	mistrustful	stubborn	defenseless
tactless	irresponsible		extravagant	defensive	non-competitive
impatient					

b) Use the following models and describe two signs in the chart:

- Rats are *not only* charming, *but also* generous.
- *Although* Rats are generous, they can *also* be greedy.
- Rats can be energetic. *In addition*, they can be persistent.
- Rats can be energetic. *Also* they can be persistent.
- Rats can be energetic. *Furthermore*, they can be persistent.

c) Agree or disagree with characteristics that refer to you. Explain your answer.

Exercise 19. a) Expressing feelings about people you know. Read the first text; choose words to complete the second text; and put words in the blanks in the third.

We don't get on well

Charanjit

I really like my boss. She's a lovely person, very easy to work for, very fair. She always asks what I think before she changes anything. If there's a problem, we talk about it. She never gets angry. I trust her, and she trusts me. It's a pleasure to work for her.

George

I get on all right with my boss. He's sometimes a bit *interesting/difficult* to work for, but he's *never/usually* quite fair, and he trusts me to do my job well. I *hate/like* that. On the other hand, he doesn't always realise how *much/many* time I need for some things, and he *comes/gets* angry when I haven't finished. But on the whole, I don't *know/think* we get on too badly.

Lesley

I hate my job, and I can't stand my _____. We really don't get well at all. He's very _____ to talk to, because he just doesn't listen. And he's not fair: he can make mistakes, and that's all right, but when I _____ a mistake, he _____ angry. He changes his mind about things again and again. I can't leave my job right now, but I am really fed up with that man.

b) Think of a person you know (sister/uncle/teacher/boss). Speak about the way you get on with that person. Try to use words from the texts above and from your Active Words.

Exercise 20. Read the first text. Then copy and complete the second text, using the information in the table and the vocabulary in the first text.

Neville and Rachel are happily married, and they get on well together, but they are very different kinds of people. Rachel is a cheerful, outgoing woman who enjoys talking to people; Neville is very reserved, though he likes the company of his friends.

Rachel is interested in sport - especially tennis and swimming - while Neville is more of an indoor type who prefers reading and listening to music.

Neville likes cooking, and makes delicious meals for the family; Rachel can't stand housework.

However, in spite of their differences, they do have one thing in common: they are both gifted and enthusiastic photographers, and they have organised several successful exhibitions of their work.

	ANNE	PETER
PERSONALITY	reserved	reserved
GAMES	basketball, tennis	football
INSTRUMENTS	violin	none
CLASSICAL MUSIC:	likes	likes
POP MUSIC	hates	hates

Anne and Peter are very similar12 people. They are both rather.....3,4 they enjoy the5 of their friends. They6 like sport,7 .ball games: Ann plays.....8910 regularly, while Peter plays11 for his local club.

Anne and Peter are12 very13 in 14.....music, and they often go to concerts.15 is a good violinist;16 doesn't play an instrument. Neither of them can.....1718 music.

However,.....1920 of all the things they have in21, they do not always22...23 very well together, and they are not really very24 married.

Exercise 21. Translate into English using your active words:

- Мы всегда уважаем честных, откровенных, трудолюбивых, скромных и воспитанных людей.
- Люди думают, что британцы сдержанные, аристократичные, высокомерные, вежливые, снобы и интроверты.
- Моя новая соседка дружелюбна и мы с ней хорошо ладим. Единственное, что мне в ней не нравится – это то, что она болтушка. А иногда она мне кажется скучной и занудливой.
- Бетти, моей двоюродной сестре, 19. Часто она неряшлива и непунктуальна, но у нас один взгляд на многие вещи и я могу положиться на нее.
- Наш новый начальник – настойчивый и решительный человек. Он уверен в себе, тверд, общителен, объективен, здравомыслящий и практичный.
- Моему брату Нику 8 лет. Он непослушный и любит шумные игры. Он ходит в школу и ленится делать домашнее задание. Иногда он обманывает, но все любят его, несмотря на эти недостатки.
- Он был человеком благородным и щедрым.
- Наши гости были людьми легкомысленными и заурядными.
- Она чуткая и гордая, мудрая и ответственная девушка.
- Красив тот, кто красиво поступает.

Reading

Reading 1. My Boy-friend

Exercise 1. Read the text.

My boy-friend is called Alex. We met two years ago. I find him exceptional. Alex is **not only** calm and polite **but also** very amusing. He possesses a good sense of humour and has a gift of entertaining friends. Alex always has a nice word for and about people and easily makes friends. I consider that he is a very reliable person and a good companion. **In addition** he is a man of strong character **in spite of** his kind nature. His teachers at University admire him for hard work, good behaviour and **also** deep knowledge. Alex is **really** good at all the subjects and is **especially** fond of literature. **Although** he is a bit lazy about learning things by heart. **Furthermore**, Alex is keen on sports. He is such a sweet boy. I believe we make good friends **though** we are **quite** different, we are **even** opposites. But they say extremes meet, **so** I hope we'll get on well with each other. I really adore him.

Exercise 2. Write down the bolded words and translate them.

Exercise 3. Answer the questions:

1. What does she find her boy-friend?
2. Alex possesses a good sense of humour, doesn't he?
3. What do Alex's teachers admire him for?
4. He is good at ..., especially fond of ..., keen on ..., but a bit lazy about
5. Prove that the girl-friend really adores Alex.

Exercise 4. Fill in the necessary prepositions:

1. Dolly likes knitting but she is lazy ... cooking.
2. Nick is good ... maths.
3. My friend is fond ... chess.
4. I admire them ... their courage.
5. He's got a bunch ... bad habits.
6. She loves me ... spite ... all my faults.
7. Are you satisfied ... your progress?
8. We get ... well ... each other.
9. Her brother is keen ... football.
10. She is so kind. She always finds a good word ... and ... her friends.

Exercise 5. Translate into English:

1. Ева тихая и застенчивая девушка. Мы очень хорошо ладим.
2. Лена очень трудолюбивая девушка, хотя часто ленится готовить.
3. Он обладает прекрасным чувством юмора.
4. Паша обожает свою маму.
5. Моя сестра очень умна не смотря на свой юный возраст.
6. Катя – общительная девушка и легко заводит друзей.
7. Виктор страстно увлекается гороскопами.
8. Я восхищаюсь его сильным характером.
9. Противоположности сходятся.
10. У него талант к заучиванию наизусть.

Exercise 6. Complete the text with the words and expressions from the box.

always	beautiful	blue	each other	forget
girl-friend	her	is doing	laughed	listen
long	fair	neither	nor	nose
quite	Shakespeare's	smile	tired	worked

My first real ... was a very ... girl called Penny. She was ... tall, ... slim ... fat, with a lovely figure. She had ..., ... hair and ... eyes, a funny short ..., and a wide mouth with a wonderful ..., like the sun coming out. Her voice was soft and nice to ... to. She had a great sense of humour, and we ... a lot. At nights she ... as a nurse in a mental hospital, and she was often very ... when we saw ..., but she was ... fun to be with. She was a very talented actress, and I will never ... her playing Hermione in a student production of ... *Winter's Tale*. Penny was a lovely ..., and I was lucky to know I often wonder what she ... now.

Exercise 7. Get ready to speak about your boy-friend (girl-friend).

Reading 2. Appearances are deceptive.

Exercise 1. Read the text with the help of dictionary.

Appearances are deceptive. It is a common truth; practically everyone has met at least someone whose character and appearance differ radically.

When one sees a tall, broad-shouldered youth, one expects him to be strong-willed and brave. One thinks: 'A model to follow!' How often a good-looking individual turns out to be petty, weak-willed or even cowardly. Then one thinks: 'A mediocrity!'

At the same time everyone knows that a lot of great people were of a poor build: short and fragile. It did not stop them from displaying intelligence and courage. Ingenuity does not depend on one's complexion or constitution.

Plump or fat people create an impression of generous and kind personalities. Strangely enough, not rarely they may be thrifty or even greedy. One usually thinks: 'A scrooge!'

On the other hand, thin or slim nervous ladies often tend to be lavish. They like to buy and never think twice when they pay. One thinks: 'I would call her open-handed and Mother would call her a spendthrift'. Yes, mothers are always stricter in judgements.

Has it ever happened to you that you come to an important office and see an important boss? You immediately evaluate his looks: Round-faced, small narrow eyes, dimples on the cheeks and an upturned nose. What a kind-hearted person! A simpleton!' You tell the boss of your troubles and expect immediate help. But the boss appears to be rude, harsh and willful. You never get your help and link: 'A stone heart and an iron fist'.

When someone sees a delicately built pretty blonde with curly hair, blue eyes, a straight nose and a high forehead, one is inclined to ok that the

beauty is intelligent and nice. It may be disappointing to think later 'What a stupid, capricious, impolite bore!'

On the contrary, when one sees a skinny brunette with ugly irregular features - a hooked nose, pointed chin, close-set eyes and thin lips, strange thoughts come to one's head; because it is the image of evil people - cruel and cunning. It may be a relief some time later to find her a clever, gentle and good-mannered lady and think: 'What charm! A heart of gold!'

Another general misconception lies in the fact that children are always expected to resemble their parents. And parents like it when children take after them. Relatives like to compare moles, the shape of noses, etc. The greatest compliment is: 'They are as like as two peas'. The greatest disappointment is to find nothing in common. We want to deny people their exclusiveness, we don't want to admit that nature has selected other options from an enormous genetic fund developed over generations. Why do we like our copies? Who knows!

Nature likes to play tricks on us. But don't you think it is a present on the part of nature? Life becomes not a boring routine, but a brilliant kaleidoscope of characters and appearances which often clash.

Exercise 2. Do you agree that appearances are deceptive? Prove it using the text. Tell your classmates about your own experience.

Reading 3.

Exercise 1. Read a student's composition. Correct the mistakes if any.

Lincoln, one of the greatest American presidents, was said to be very bad looking. Once when his rival accused him to be a "two sided" person, Lincoln replied by saying to the audience, "If I had another face, would I wear this one?" Now what we remember about Lincoln is his character, his deeds, his contribution to the country, no one would care about what he looked like.

I agree with the title statement because a person's inner quality is much more important than his external appearances. Whether a person looks good or bad cannot be decided by himself. A man's external appearances are born and generally cannot be changed. But everyone can improve his inner quality by his own efforts. By reading books, learning from others and working hard, we can make progress and achieve success. It was said that Napoleon was very short, but he was respected and admired by people as an outstanding military and political leader. It is the dream of every man to have a pretty wife, yet it is also widely acknowledged that a beautiful woman does not necessarily equal a good wife.

Many men would rather choose a woman with a common face than a good-looking one. Because they know that the virtue of a woman is more important than her outer appearance. A great deal of couples who go hand in hand for their life attribute their happy marriage to loving the other's inner quality instead of loving a pretty face. In business, a boss would never judge his employees by their external appearances; instead what he concerns would be their capability, their assiduity, and their performance. A person with bad appearances but good performance will more likely be promoted than another one with good appearances but bad performance.

Above all, if a person has good appearances, he should not rely on them because he will unlikely achieve success if he does not work hard. However, on the other hand, if he looks bad, he should not feel depressed because he can make others respect him through his own efforts.

Exercise 2. Express your opinion on the subject “What is more important about a person: appearance or character?”

Speaking

Exercise 1. Read these brief character descriptions. Which of these four people sounds most like you? Which would you most like to meet?

Amrita

'I'm an active and energetic person - I can't bear just sitting around doing nothing. It just makes me impatient and restless. But I know what I want, and I think I've got what it takes to achieve my goals. Does that make me sound horribly ambitious and selfish? I hope not!'

Kevin

'I'm the kind of person who knows how to have a good time. I suppose you would call me fun-loving, but it's more than that. I actually believe in a calm, cool, easy-going approach to life and I can't bear unnecessary anxiety and pressure. I believe in being sociable and taking life as it comes ...'

Larry

'My problem can be summarised in one word: self-consciousness. I just don't have enough. I'm shy with other people, who must think I'm boring and stupid sometimes. Lack of confidence also makes me indecisive: I spend days trying to make up my mind what to do about quite simple things. I'm told I sometimes look moody, but in fact I like being with other people ...'

Cathy

'How do I see myself? Well, I'm forgetful and disorganised - some would say absent-minded! But I've got quite a lot of willpower, really, and I've got ideas. I'm a hardworker too when I'm doing something I'm interested in. I'm not very articulate when it comes to public speaking but I quite enjoy being the centre of attention, and I don't get in the least bit nervous.'

Exercise 2. Speak on the topic “My cousin / My friend / Pablo Picasso, etc. is a typical (Star sign)”. Make use of the exercises above.

Exercise 3. a) Read the following descriptions and say who these people are describing. Relative? Friend? Colleague? Neighbour? Somebody else?

1. She's absolutely adorable. I think she's very pretty, she makes me laugh a lot, um ... she tells terrible jokes but I like the way she tells them. She's a bit naughty sometimes and I curse her when she gets me up at six o'clock in the morning, but when I hear her singing in the morning, well, all is forgiven. She can twist me round her little finger, of course.

2. He was very boring and predictable. The kind of person who remembered birthdays and anniversaries, but who made you angry because

there was absolutely nothing spontaneous about him. His ideas of fun were so unadventurous. Well, the first few years were OK, but after that I'd just had enough. Reliable, stable, dependable, and boring.

3. Well, he's quite well-dressed and punctual. Sometimes he's cheerful and tells jokes, but other times we have to do a lot of work. We don't really know him very well. Oh, I know he's married, but I've never met him socially or anything like that. He seems very professional.

4. I've never actually spoken to him. Mmm, I see him every day. Of course, as he leaves his car and gets in the lift to his flat on the top floor. He's terribly well-dressed, and he must wear expensive after-shave because you can still smell it ten minutes after he's gone.

b) Now, think of someone you know well. Describe him/her in brief; speak about distinguished features of character, habits, and interests. Try to compose the description in such a way so that your group mates could guess who the described person is: your relative, friend, school teacher, etc.

Exercise 4. a) Whereas women tend to notice the eyes, teeth and smile in particular, men will be more likely to assess the face in general and pay more attention to figure and legs.

These are the top ten attributes that men and women look for in each other, in order of priority (Singles magazine):

Men look for a woman who is:	Women look for a man who is:
attractive	tall
sincere	professional
slim	with a sense of humour
a non-smoker	attractive
intelligent	sincere
with a sense of humour	intelligent
affectionate	handsome
tall	kind
kind	educated

c) Speak on your idea of your future husband's / wife's character.

Exercise 5. Match the words in proper pairs and illustrate their meanings in short situations or sentences of your own.

As innocent	as an eel
As cunning	as an owl
As busy	as a rake
As neat	as a bee
As slippery	as a babe unborn

As thin	as a new pin
As true	as a fox
As obstinate	as steel
As wise	as a donkey

Exercise 6. Give Russian equivalents of the following proverbs and sayings and illustrate their meanings in situations of your own.

- Still waters run fast.
- Handsome is as handsome does.
- Custom is a second nature.
- A good name is better than riches.
- A little body often harbours a great soul.
- A word is enough to the wise.
- All that glitters is not gold.
- He that is full of himself is very empty.
- You cannot judge a tree by its trunk.

Writing

Exercise 1. Prepare to write a dictation.

Exercise 2. Read the text and write a similar description of a member of your family. Include the following:

- your opinion of the person;
- physical description;
- their character, habits, likes and dislikes.

My Aunt Emily

Of all my relatives, I like my Aunt Emily best. She's my mother's youngest sister. She has never married, and she lives alone in a small village near Bath. She's in her late fifties, but she's still quite young in spirit. She has a fair complexion, thick brown hair which she wears in a bun, and dark brown eyes. She has a kind face, and when you meet her, the first thing you notice is her lovely, warm smile. Her face is a little wrinkled now, but I think she is still rather attractive. She is the sort of person you can always go to if you have a problem.

She likes reading and gardening, and she goes for long walks over the hills with her dog, Buster. She's a very active person. Either she's making something, or mending something, or doing something to help others. She does the shopping for some of the old people in the village. She's extremely generous, but not very tolerant with people who don't agree with her. I hope that I am as happy and contented as she is when I'm her age.

Exercise 3. Friends are an important part of our daily lives. During our time at university we will spend a lot of time making new friends, keeping old friends and in some cases, losing friends. In fact new courses, jobs, holidays and new situations will mean we are forever meeting and making new friends.

Use the following ideas and in writing give your idea of a good friend:

What is a friend

I think a friend is someone ...

- who always does what you want to do.
- you can tell things you won't tell anyone else.
- who will take "no" for an answer and won't try to make you change your mind.
- who shares all their possessions with you.
- who is about your age and lives near you.
- you can rely on not to let you down.
- you find attractive and exciting.
- who will point out your mistakes if you behave badly.
- who has the same likes and dislikes as you.
- who is fun to be with.
- who treats you like a sister or a brother.

I want my friend to ... / I don't want my friend to ...

- to have the same likes and dislikes;
- to agree with everything I say;
- to be reliable;
- to do what I want to do;
- to help in troubles;
- to understand;
- to support my crazy ideas;
- just to have free time and relax;
- to gossip;
- to help in the case of emergency only;
- to behave like an idiot;
- to let me down;
- to share things;
- to deceive ;
- to betray ;
- to pry his/her nose in my business.

UNIT V. LEISURE

Section A. Hobbies and Interests

Active Words

leisure time / hobby / pastime / leisure activity /
recreation / relaxation / rest / refreshment
to entertain / entertainment
to take part in / to participate in
to be interested in / to be fond of / to be keen on
to take up / to take to / to give up a hobby
to do smth for enjoyment / to enjoy smth
to have a good time / a lot of fun / a rest
to plan smth for the weekend
to have a winter (summer) holiday
to put one's feet up and relax
to create smth
to do smth at leisure
to be hooked on smth
to be addicted to smth
to be obsessed with smth
to be popular with smb
to spend free time on smth / to waste free time
to join a club

painting / drawing	mountaineering / rock-climbing
windsurfing	collecting stamps, coins, badges
sunbathing	jumping from a plane / parachuting
skiing	arranging flowers
(ice-)skating	visiting a museum, a gallery, etc.
dancing	listening to music (CDs, tapes, records)
swimming	playing volleyball (football, basketball, hockey)
reading	playing cards (chess, dominoes, draughts)
singing	playing musical instruments (the piano, the guitar)
cycling	playing computer games
cooking	gambling in a casino
(scuba-)diving	doing crosswords
going out	gazing into space
doing nothing	using the Internet
going shopping	watching TV / a video
going to discos	taking photographs
going abroad	eating in restaurants, bars, cafes
gardening	looking after animals, fish, birds, pets
horse-riding	going fishing, hunting, hiking, walking, sailing

pottery
 camping
 carpentry
 shooting
 fishing
 hunting
 skateboarding
 hang-gliding
 canoeing

inviting friends to dinner, party, around
 speaking on the phone
 going to the cinema, theatre, the zoo
 going sightseeing / seeing the sights
 going on a trip, an excursion, an outing, a picnic
 growing (house) plants, vegetables
 picking up berries, mushrooms, flowers
 sewing, knitting, embroidery, needlework
 making model planes, sculptures

active
 passive
 amusing
 boring
 creative

dangerous
 enjoyable
 entertaining
 exciting
 ideal

indoor
 outdoor
 inventive
 popular
 fascinating

Vocabulary Exercises

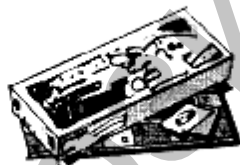
Exercise 1. Study the pictures and choose:

- three things that people often play
- three things that people often collect
- five hobbies which include some physical exercise

Things people play



cards



board games



chess



guitar



saxophone

musical instruments

Things people collect



stamps



coins



antiques

Outdoor activities



hiking



camping



rock climbing

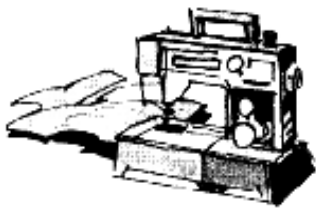


hunting



jogging

Creative hobbies



Caroline makes her own clothes. (= she makes clothes for herself; she doesn't buy them)



Barbara likes photography.



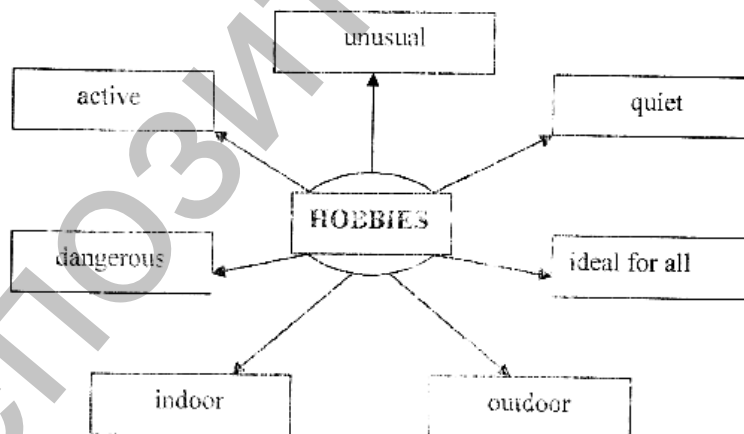
Brigit is mad about (= really likes) DIY. (DIY = do-it-yourself)

Note: With the hobbies we can use two different verbs *go* and *do*:
I often *go camping* in the summer. / I *do rock-climbing* in the summer.

Exercise 2. Write *play* or *go*.

_____ football	_____ walking	_____ sailing
_____ swimming	_____ volleyball	_____ tennis
_____ golf	_____ ice-skating	_____ dancing
_____ ice-hockey	_____ windsurfing	_____ skiing
_____ fishing	_____ baseball	_____ climbing

Exercise 3. Distribute the hobbies and leisure activities according to the groups.



Exercise 3. Look at the pictures and identify the hobbies.

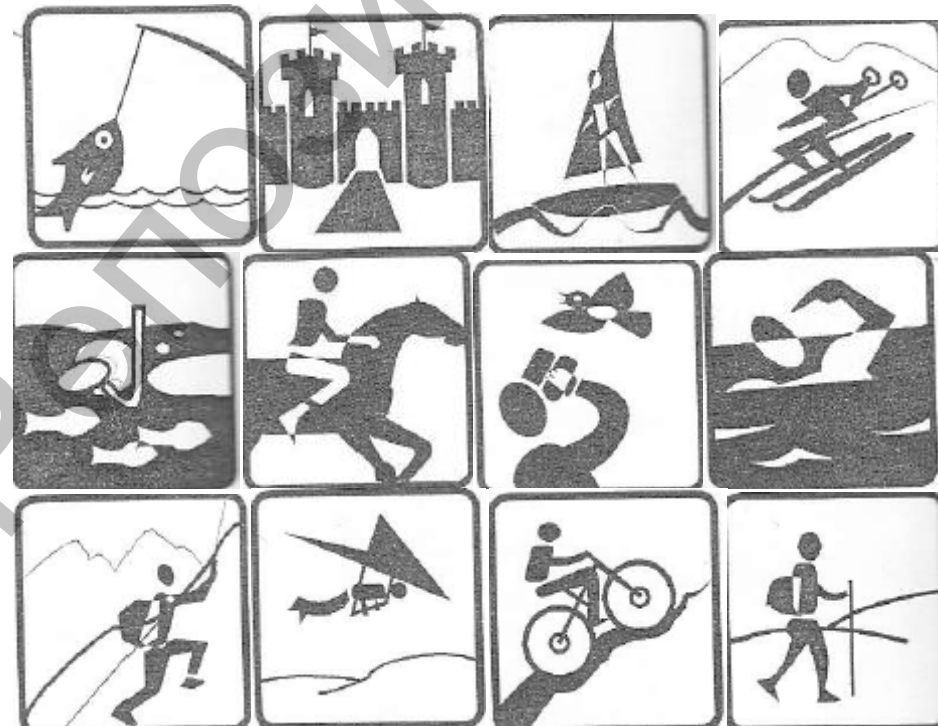
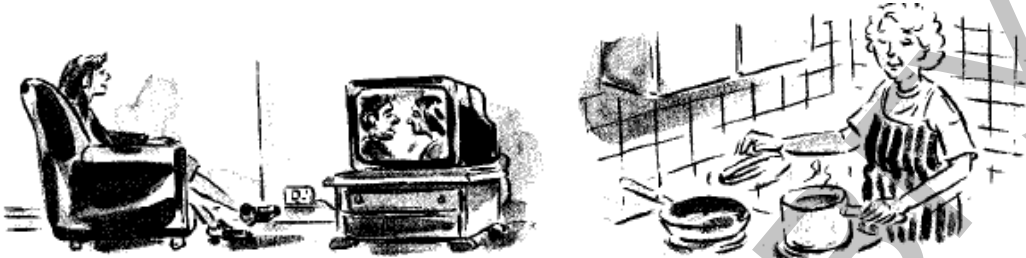
a) Say which are:

- most / less popular hobbies with children / older people
- traditional / old-fashioned / up-to-date hobbies
- expensive / cheap hobbies
- outdoor / indoor hobbies

b) Which hobby is:

- a) the most (least) suitable for young people?
- b) the most (least) suitable for old people?
- c) the most suitable for children?
- d) the most (least) suitable for men?
- e) the most (least) suitable for women?
- f) the most satisfying for everybody?
- g) the most active?
- h) the most dangerous?
- i) the most expensive?
- j) the funniest?
- k) the most time-consuming?
- l) the most interesting?
- m) the most boring?
- n) the noisiest?
- o) the cheapest?





4. The great thing is you can do it when you like. I usually do it three or four times a week - either early in the morning, or after school. I only go for about 25 minutes but it really keeps me fit.
5. Obviously it saves me a lot of money; and in any case, I hate buying things in boutiques because so many things are badly made.
6. I joined a club because I wanted to get better, and I now play twice a week in the evenings. It has helped me a lot and I have a much better memory for all the different moves and strategies.
7. I think this is a very common hobby for people like me, who have a house but don't have much money. That's why I started, but now I think I do a better job than many professionals.

Exercise 7. Complete these sentences with a suitable verb.

- 1 How often do you jogging?
- 2 She hiking because she wanted to get more exercise. Unfortunately, she didn't like it and she it about six months later.
- 3 She has always her own clothes; it's much cheaper than buying them.
- 4 He old coins.
- 5 I..... quite a lot of rock climbing when I'm on holiday.
- 6 I learnt to the piano when I was at school.
- 7 I wanted to improve my chess, so I a chess club.
- 8 I don't really anything in my spare time.
- 9 He likes to stamps and photographs.
- 10 Do you like to be active in your spare time, or do you put your feet up and

Exercise 8. Why do we go to these places?

Model: We go to a zoo to look at the animals.

a disco	to see a play
an art gallery	to watch how people dance
a casino	to dance
a concert	to try to win the money
a theatre	to look at the animals
a zoo	to listen to music
a ballet	to look at paintings

Exercise 9. Express your feelings about the pastimes. Use the following:

- I like
- I dislike
- I love
- I enjoy
- I am interested in
- I prefer to
- I don't mind.....
- I adore

- I can't bear / can't stand ...
- I am fond of
- I can't afford to.....
- I am keen on
- I am mad / crazy about ...
- I object to
- I am fed up with
- I am dying to
- I hate / loathe

Exercise 10. Read about the Royal hobbies and make up sentences on the Queen's likes and dislikes using phrases from the exercise above.

The Queen's particular

Likes	Dislikes
horse-racing	ivy
Scottish country dancing	snails
jigsaw puzzles	tennis
long-stemmed, deep-pink carnations	milk pudding
champagne	the cold
deerstalking	grouse
crossword puzzles	any talk of Edward VIII
bright red dresses	Charles Dickens
The Beatles film 'Yellow Submarine'	dictating letters
	laying foundation stones
	cigar smoking
	sailing
	listening to after-dinner speeches

Exercise 11. Give Russian equivalents to the following proverbs and sayings. Use them in the situations of your own.

- Every man has his hobby-horse.
- Tastes differ.
- The busiest man finds the most leisure.
- It's the busiest man who has time to spare.

Exercise 12. Translate into English.

1. Где вы проводите свой свободный день?
2. В воскресенье мы встаем позже, чем обычно.
3. Иногда мы ходим в лес собирать ягоды и грибы.
4. На вечере мы пели песни, танцевали под музыку, играли в разные игры.
5. Они прекрасно провели время в прошлые выходные.
6. Мое хобби – коллекционирование марок и значков.
7. За городом мы загораем, играем в волейбол и бадминтон, иногда рыбачим и разводим костры.
8. В плохую погоду я принимаю друзей у себя дома, мы читаем книги и смотрим фильмы по телевизору, а затем мы обсуждаем их.
9. Танин папа прекрасно играл на гитаре на ее дне рождения.

10. Я очень люблю разгадывать кроссворды и играть в компьютерные игры.

Reading

Reading 1.

Exercise 1. Read the text and do the tasks below

The English say: "He who knows how to work, knows how to rest". Leisure should be refreshment; it should send a man out with fresh spirits to battle with the problems of life. All people are different and so they prefer spending their free time in different ways. Many people get full value from his leisure by contemplating nature, listening to music, or reading books.

A hobby is a favourite pastime of a person. Hobbies differ like tastes. If you have chosen a hobby to your character and liking, lucky you are: you have made your life more interesting.

Numerous hobbies can be subdivided into four large classes: doing things, making things, collecting things, and learning things.

The most popular of all hobby groups is doing things. It includes a wide variety of activities, everything from gardening to travelling and from chess to volleyball. Gardening is one of the oldest man's hobbies, especially in some countries (Britain, for example).

Making things includes drawing, painting, making sculptures, designing costumes, and handicrafts. Some hobbyists write music or play musical instruments.

Almost everyone collects something at a certain period in his life: stamps, coins, matchboxes, books, records, postcards, toys, etc. Some collections have no real value. Others become so large and so valuable that they are housed in museums and galleries. Many world-famous collections started in a small way with one or two items. People with a good deal of money often collect paintings, rare books or other art objects. Often such private collections are given to museums, libraries and public galleries so that others might take pleasure in seeing them.

No matter what kind of hobby a person has, he always has the opportunity of learning from it. By reading about the things he is interested in, he is adding to what he knows. Learning things can be the most exciting aspect of a hobby.

By the way in which a man uses his leisure his character can be told. Some people are completely passive during leisure hours. Such people like to stay at home watching TV. If such people go out they go to some place of entertainment where no effort is required by them, a cinema or a dance-hall, and if the latter, they do not dance but simply sit and watch others dancing.

A different type of person hurries home full of eagerness to begin on some scheme which he has been planning for his leisure time. Perhaps his

hobby is carpentry or model engineering or gardening; or he might wish to study some subject in which he is interested. This is a creative type of character. For him, his leisure hours are full of promise and he can look back on them with satisfaction.

In Belarus there's almost every kind of entertainment you can imagine. There are numerous places of interest where people can spend their leisure hours. There are many theatres, museums, concert halls, cinemas, palaces of culture, libraries. For those who are fond of sport there are a lot of sport centres, stadiums, sport clubs, etc. Parks and gardens are the most popular places for recreation among nature lovers. They attract both children and adults.

There are a lot of clubs and sections. Those who like to dance, join a dancing section. Those who are interested in music join a musical section where they are taught to play different musical instruments. People who are fond of sports can join sport sections, such as football, skiing, chess and others. The art section is one of the most popular with people, because they can learn to create beautiful things there. Some members are taught to paint, and they organize local exhibitions of their paintings. Some do cutting work, others grow flowers.

As for me I prefer to spend my free time in different ways. I like to go in for sports, to play football, basketball or volleyball with my friends. I like to watch TV, to listen to music and play computer games. Also I like to go for a walk in the country and enjoy the beauty of nature.

And my hobby is reading books. I'd like to say that it's hard to imagine our life without books. In my opinion a book is one of the greatest wonders of the world. It gives us a unique chance to link up with authors who lived hundreds of years ago. Books play a great role in the development of personality. Books enrich our experience and continue our education. I'm sure that a reader lives a richer life than a non-reader. Books help us to forget our daily problems. We can travel to the past, future and to many different, wonderful places that we can't visit in reality. I am also sure that books are our good friends and teachers. From them we get to know life better, they teach us how to tell right from wrong, to love our Motherland, to understand friendship, people's feelings. So, they teach us how to live. The time spent on a good book is never wasted. As for me I like to read different kinds of books: adventure stories, detective stories, historical novels, etc.

Besides reading books I really enjoy going to the cinema: it's one of my favourite pastimes. I'm a great cinema-goer. I think that watching a good film is the best relaxation. There's a wide variety of films available nowadays. They are wonderful comedies, thrillers, westerns, love stories, science fiction, horror films, detective stories, historical films.

When I want to go to the cinema I usually phone my friends and we discuss what films to see. I prefer feature films but also enjoy popular science films.

My favourite film is "Emma" with Gwyneth Paltrow as a leading actress. It is a screen version of the book written by Jane Austene. I think that this film is very amusing, entertaining and it is worth seeing. I enjoy not only the film, but the scenery, costumes, music and actors' playing.

In my opinion hobby gives us a wonderful chance to meet new friends, to broaden our horizon and to enrich our inner world.

Exercise 2. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following Russian words and phrases:

1. досуг
2. получать пользу от отдыха
3. созерцать природу
4. любимое времяпровождение
5. по чьему-либо вкусу
6. подразделяться на (какие-либо классы, подгруппы)
7. включать что-либо (в состав)
8. широкий круг занятий
9. заниматься скульптурой
10. рукоделие, ручная работа
11. человек, имеющий хобби
12. собирать, коллекционировать
13. получать удовольствие от занятия чем-либо
14. интересоваться музыкой
15. вступить в спортивную секцию
16. создавать красивые вещи
17. обогащать опыт
18. фильм (спектакль) стоит посмотреть
19. наслаждаться музыкой, костюмами, актёрской игрой
20. многочисленные развлекательные центры

Exercise 3. Say if the statements are true or false according to the text:

1. He, who knows how to work, knows how to rest.
2. People spend their leisure time in the same way.
3. All people are active during their leisure hours.
4. Hobbies differ like tastes.
5. There are few places where you can spend your free time.
6. Books enrich our experience and continue our education.
7. Watching a good film is the best relaxation.
8. There are few places of interest in Belarus where people can spend their leisure hours.

Exercise 4. Complete the sentences:

1. The English say: "He who knows how to ..., knows how to ..."
2. Leisure should be a ... ; it should send a man out with fresh spirits to ... with the problems of life.
3. Many people get full ... from their leisure by ... nature, listening to or reading books.
4. Numerous hobbies can be ... into four large classes: ... things, things, ... things, and ... things.
5. Making things includes
6. Almost everyone ... something at some period in his life: stamps, ...
7. ... things can be the most exciting aspect of a hobby.
8. Books ... our experience and continue our ...
9. There's a wide variety of films available nowadays. They are
10. In Belarus there's almost every kind of ... you can imagine.

Exercise 5. Answer the questions:

1. What is leisure?
2. Why should leisure be refreshment?
3. What types of men are there by the way they spend their leisure?
4. What is a hobby?
5. Tastes differ. Can you say the same about hobbies?
6. What classes can hobbies be divided into?
7. The most popular hobby group is doing things, isn't it?
8. What activities does doing things include?
9. What do hobbyists do who prefer making things do?
10. Do you enjoy making things?
11. What do people collect?
12. Have you ever collected anything?
13. Do you agree that learning is the most exciting aspect of a hobby? Why?
14. How do people learn from his or her hobby?
15. Have you chosen a hobby according to your character and taste?

Exercise 6. Translate into English:

1. Люди проводят своё свободное время по-разному: слушают музыку, смотрят телевизор, читают книги, занимаются спортом или созерцают природу.
2. Хобби - это времяпровождение, которое человек выбирает по своему вкусу.
3. Четыре класса, на которые подразделяются хобби - это делать что-либо, создавать что-либо, собирать что-либо и узнавать что-либо новое.
4. Почти каждый собирает что-нибудь в какой-то период своей жизни: марки, монеты, спичечные коробки, книги, открытки, игрушки и т.д.

5. Возможность узнавать новое - это самая увлекательная сторона хобби.
6. По тому, как человек проводит своё свободное время, можно сказать о его характере.
7. Творческие люди спешат домой, чтобы начать то, что они запланировали для своего досуга.
8. Книги играют большую роль в развитии личности. Книги обогащают наш опыт и продолжают образование.
9. Просмотр хорошего фильма - это лучший отдых.
10. В Беларуси есть множество мест, где можно провести свободное время. Есть много театров, музеев, концертных залов, кинотеатров, библиотек и т.д.

Exercise 7. Give a summary of the text according to the outline:

1. Leisure should be refreshment.
2. All people spend their free time in different ways.
3. Hobbies differ like tastes.
4. By the way in which a man uses his leisure his character can be told.
5. There are numerous places of interest in Belarus.
6. The time spent on a good book is never wasted.
7. Watching a film is the best relaxation.

Reading 2. Hobbies

Exercise. Have a look through the following texts. The writer gives us an impression of the various pastimes and hobbies enjoyed by the British and Americans. As you read, ask yourself how their activities can be compared with the interests of the people in your country.

«Hobbies» are a great British and American tradition. A «hobby» is a special interest or activity that you do in your time off.

Some people have animals as hobbies. They keep rabbits, or go fishing. They train dogs to do tricks, or keep pigeons to race and carry messages. Some are crazy about plants. They try to grow cacti or rare tropical flowers in their kitchens and sitting rooms.

Others are mad about their car or their motorbike. They spend their Saturdays and Sundays washing them, painting them or buying new bits and pieces to make them go even faster.

Children and teenagers are great collectors. They collect stamps or postcards or matchboxes or pictures of a favourite football or pop star.

Many people make things as a hobby. Some teach themselves at home, but a lot of people go to evening classes. Just look under letter B in a list of evening classes and you'll find: Ballet, Batik, Bengali, Body-building, Bread-making.

Recreation: American style. A «hobby» is usually something that a person does alone. But American (and British) families sometimes like to

do things together, too. Some American families have quite a lot of money to spend on their recreation. They can all enjoy their holiday home or their boat somewhere in the country away from home.

Americans love to get out of town into the wild, and many go for holidays or long weekends into the thirty-five fabulous national parks. These magnificent areas of countryside include tropical forests, high mountains, dry deserts, long sandy coasts, grassy prairies and wooden mountains full of wild animals. The idea of these parks, which cover 1% of the whole area of the USA, is to make «a great breathing place for the national lungs» and to keep different parts of the land as they were before man arrived. There are camping places in the national parks as well as museums, boat trips and evening campfire meetings.

Americans really enjoy new «gadgets», especially new ways of travelling. In the winter, the woods are full of «snowmobiles» (cars with skis in the front). In the summer they ride their «dune buggies» across the sands or take to the sky in hang-gliders.

But Americans do not only spend their free time having fun. They are interested in the culture, too. Millions take part-time courses in writing, painting and music and at the weekends the museums, art galleries and concert halls are full.

Reading 3. My idea of fun!

Exercise 1. People around the world relax in very different ways. Read about favourite leisure activities in three continents...

Surfing capital of the world

Any sunny day on the coast of Australia, you can see hundreds of young people going to the beach. They all share Australia's national passion - surfing. 'My friends and I usually go down to the beach before breakfast in the summer,' says 19-year-old Jim Wolfe, 'and come home again for dinner!' At weekends it is quite normal to drive hundreds of kilometres to find that 'perfect wave'. But in Sydney, the biggest city in Australia, you don't have that problem - there are thirty-four beaches close to the city centre!

The music of the people

The most popular dance of Brazil, samba, is often called 'the music of the people'. In the 1960s and 1970s people turned to US-style pop music, but these days samba is back again. There are different versions of samba: some that people dance in their villages, others that they practise especially to dance at Carnival. In Rio thousands of people go to samba schools, typically on a Saturday night - to dance, to learn ... or just to watch. Thirty-year-old Ana Rita goes every week with her husband '... just because it's

fun! Everybody loves to dance, and it's a great way to meet people!

A day in the 'banya'

If you're happy to take a bath in public, then a Russian banya or bath house, is the place for you. Russians of all types meet there ... at any time of day. They go there to relax, to talk to their friends or even to discuss business. 'It doesn't matter if you're old or young, fat or thin. Nobody cares, nobody looks at you ... it's a wonderful place!' says 24-year-old Masha, a student from St Petersburg. There are cold baths, as well as a hot room where the temperature can reach forty-three degrees.

Exercise 2. Complete the table below.

	When do people do this?	What sort of people do it?	Why do they do it?
surfing			
samba			
banya			

Exercise 3. What leisure activity do you consider the most popular in your continent? Why?

Reading 4. When an interest becomes an obsession...

Exercise 1. Whether it's collecting coins, supporting your favourite football team, or just shopping, most people have some kind of hobby. But what happens when that interest becomes the most important thing in your life? When a hobby becomes an obsession?

Take Colin Duffy, for example. When he was six, his father took him to see his local football team, Liverpool. Since then, Colin, now thirty-six, has seen a total of 1,729 matches, and has travelled over 75,000 miles to watch his team. Colin and his wife spent their honeymoon in Leeds (where Liverpool were playing that weekend!) and named their first son Kenny Dalglish Owen Duffy - after his two favourite players.

Colin may be Britain's number one football fan, but 22-year-old Beverley Bloom is Britain's biggest shopper. Every week she writes a newspaper column about her addiction. Fortunately, Beverley's credit card bills go to her father ... a millionaire property tycoon. 'I don't think I'd like to tell you what Beverley spends,' he says, admitting that it is well over 50,000 \$ a year.

But even Beverley cannot beat champion shopper Imelda Marcos, wife of the ex-president of the Philippines. She was so obsessed with buying shoes that when her husband fell from power, more than 3,000 pairs were found in their palace, together with over 1,000 unopened packets of tights.

Most children are interested in collecting stamps or dolls at some time, but few go as far as twenty-eight year old Tony Mattia, who fills his house with thousands of Barbie dolls. He spends hours every day combing their hair and changes all their costumes once a month. And, it seems that, the more unusual the collection, the bigger the obsession. For example, US collector Hugh Hicks has about 60,000 light bulbs and Nick Vermeulen from the Netherlands has over 2,000 aeroplane sick bags.

But such obsessions can have unfortunate results. John Weintraub became obsessed with collecting plastic figures of US presidents given as free gifts in packets of breakfast cereal. After two years he had the whole set except for Thomas Jefferson. Weintraub was so desperate to get the last one that he broke into a factory and opened every box of cereal he could find. He was seen by a guard, arrested and sent to prison. 'It's OK though,' he said, 'because at my first prison breakfast out came the statue of Jefferson.'

Exercise 2. How much can you remember about each person?

Name	Obsession	How we know they are obsessed?
Colin Duffy		
Beverly Bloom		
Imelda Marcos		
Tony Mattia		
Hugh Hicks		
Nick Vermeulen		
John Weintraub		

Exercise 3. Complete the puzzle with the words from the text. What is the hidden word?

a U N F O R T U N A T E

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

CLUES:

a The opposite of *fortunate*.

b If you are crazy about something and can't think of anything else, you are

...

c The opposite of *usual*.

d Someone who goes shopping is a ...

e If you want something very, very much, you are ... to have it.

f The opposite of *bored*.

g A lot of people have a stamp or coin ...

h The one you like best is your ...

i If you are better than anyone else at doing something, you are a ...

Exercise 4. Do you know anyone who is really obsessed with some interest? Tell about the person.

Listening

Listening 1. Free Time

(Headway elementary (Student's Book), unit 4, t.22a)

Exercise 1. Listen to three people from different countries talking about their free time. Fill in the blanks.

Al Wheeler from Canada

We have , winters and , hot summers. In summer I go and I play , but in winter I play and go We have a home near a lake, so I go a lot, too. My favourite season is , or fall, as we say in North America. I love the colours of the trees – red, gold, orange, yellow and brown.

Manuela Da Silva from Portugal

People think it's always and in Portugal, but January and February are often cold, wet and I don't like winter. I meet in and bars and we chat. Sometimes we go to a Brazilian bar. I love Brazilian music. But then suddenly it is summer and at we drive to the beach, and go I love summer.

Toshi Suzuki from Japan

I work for Pentax cameras, in the export department. I don't have a lot of time, but I have one special hobby - , or course! I like of flowers, especially in Sometimes, after work, I in a bar near my with my friends. My friend, Shigeru, likes in the bar. This has a special name, I don't sing – I'm too shy! I just watch him.

Exercise 2. Answer the questions:

- Do they all play sports?
- What do Al and Manuela do in winter?
- Do Manuela and Toshi like going to bars?
- Where is Al's holiday home?
- When does Toshi like taking photographs?
- What do Manuela and her friends do in summer?
- Do you know all their jobs?
- Why does Al like autumn?
- Who does Toshi watch?
- Why doesn't Toshi sing?

Exercise 3. Find five mistakes in this summary and correct them.

Al comes from Canada. In winter he plays ice-hockey and goes skiing. He has a holiday home near the sea.

Manuela comes from Brazil. She likes sunbathing and windsurfing in summer.

Toshi comes from Japan. He has a lot of free time. He likes taking photographs and singing pop songs in bars.

Listening 2. Leisure Activities

(Listen Carefully, unit 13, activity 2)

Exercise 1. You will hear short telephone conversations. What was each person doing when the phone rang? Number six of the pictures below from 1-6.



a.....

b.....

c.....

d.....



e.....

f.....

g.....

h.....

Exercise 2. You will hear people talking about the things they like and don't like doing in their spare time. Listen and tick how much they like each activity.

Activity	Likes it a lot	Likes it a little	Dislikes it
1. playing cards			
2. playing sports			
3. going to parties			
4. eating out			
5. dancing			
6. watching TV			
7. listening to music			
8. cooking			



Exercise 3. Listen to people getting ready to do something. Tick what you think they are going to do.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. go swimming | 5. watch TV |
| go for a drive | listen to the radio |
| 2. go to the cinema | 6. go to a party |
| go to a restaurant | have friends round for dinner |
| 3. go to a concert | 7. go to a barbecue |
| go dancing | go to a restaurant |
| 4. play basketball | |
| play tennis | |

Speaking

Exercise. Answer these questions.

- Have you got a hobby? If so, what is it?
- How long have you had this hobby?
- Is it an expensive hobby?
- Why do you like it?
- How much time do you spend on your hobby?
- Is it a common hobby in your country?

Writing

Exercise. You are sure to have enjoyed a hobby in your childhood. In writing prepare to share your recollections.

Section B. Weekends and Holidays

Reading

Reading 1. Bill Wise Gives Advice

Exercise 1. Read the following text.

- Hello, everybody!
- Hello, Bill. Come in and sit down.
- We are planning our week-end. Can you give us a piece of advice?

- There are dozens of ways of spending a week-end. It depends on the season, your character and your mode of life. You can go to the country to ski, to fish, to pick berries and mushrooms, to bathe, to boat, to walk in the forest, to lie in the sun, to watch birds, to hunt butterflies, etc.

You can stay in town and go to the cinema, theatre, to an exhibition, a museum, to a dancing party or a discotheque, a cafe or a restaurant, you can visit your friends, drop at your old aunt's to borrow money, etc.

If you prefer to stay indoors you can: watch TV, read newspapers and magazines, sleep till 2 p.m., do the flat, quarrel with your folk at home, listen to music, do nothing, etc.

But if you've got a car there are only two ways end. You either enjoy a pleasant car drive in the country or spend the week-end in your garage repairing the car with a hammer and swear-words.

It's really a pleasure to live in a large city and to be able to escape from it whenever you feel like that.

- It's really a pleasure to have you around, Bill Wise. One can always rely on your piece of advice.

Exercise 2. Find English equivalents from the text and restore the situation:

- дюжины способов
- образ жизни
- собирать грибы и ягоды
- загорать
- ловить бабочек
- заскочить к тете
- сидеть дома
- спорить с родными
- насладиться поездкой в сельской местности
- чинить машину при помощи молотка и брани
- ускользнуть из города
- рассчитывать на кого-либо в чем-либо

Exercise 3. Which activities seem suitable, unsuitable, absurd to you?

Exercise 4. Ways of spending a week-end depend on various factors. What are they?

Exercise 5. Fill in the table.

The place to spend free time	Activities
•going to the country	

Reading 2. What people do in their spare time in Britain.

Exercise. Read two texts and compare the ways of spending free time in England and Belarus.

1. At weekends in England people like to relax. You can relax in many different ways. Some people like to stay at home with their families, and others like to go out and enjoy themselves. Young people enjoy going out to pubs, to the cinema or to night clubs. Many young people also like to play different kinds of sport. Tennis is very popular in England in the summer when you can play out-doors. Other popular sports are badminton, football, basketball and cricket. Cricket is a very traditional English game. It is played a lot at schools and in villages in summer.

If you have children, you often go on day-trips to the seaside or take your children to amusement parks or perhaps to the zoo. In summer many parents like to take their children on picnics in the countryside, especially if they live in a big city. It is nice to get away from the noise and the traffic at weekends and relax in the country.

If you have a house in the country you probably spend a lot of time in the garden. Gardening is another very traditional English pastime. People

are proud of their gardens and spend many hours trying to grow beautiful flowers and rare bushes.

English people usually have about five weeks' holiday a year, apart from public holidays like Christmas and Easter. Many people like to go abroad for their holiday because the English weather is not always sunny. People want to lie in the sun and swim in the sea. So they cross the Channel and go to France, Spain or Italy. Some people fly, but a lot of people drive their cars to the beaches in Southern Europe. However, many people also enjoy staying in Britain and visiting other regions of their own country. They like going to the seaside in the south of England or the Lake District in the north. Many people also go to Scotland. It all depends on what you enjoy doing. You can relax in many different ways in England.

2. The most common leisure activities in Britain as well as in many other countries are reading, watching TV, going to the theatre, opera, ballet, cinema, concerts, museums, exhibitions, listening to the music, going to see friends and having friends round. A hobby is not only one's favourite occupation, but something more or less systematic. Hobbies often involve collecting and making things, for example, stamp-collecting or making model ships and aeroplanes.

Many people in the UK attend the so-called evening classes, connected with their hobbies, such as photography, painting, folk-dancing, dog training, cooking, archaeology, local history, car maintenance and many others. In the classes, people find an agreeable social life as well as the means for pursuing their own hobbies more satisfactorily.

British pubs and clubs are world-famous institutions where Englishmen like to spend their free time. Both of them are an unchallenged English invention. Businessmen, solicitors, advertising men, artists, actors, salesmen and others find clubs an ideal field for operation. The club is based on two ancient British ideas — the segregation of classes, and the segregation of sexes: and they remain insistent on keeping people out, long after they have stopped attending clubs.

Much leisure time in Britain is spent in individualistic pursuits. The most popular of them is, perhaps, gardening. Most English people like gardens and that is probably why so many people prefer to live in houses. For some of them gardening is the foundation of social and competitive relationships. Flower-shows and vegetable-shows, with prizes for the best exhibits, are immensely popular, and to many gardeners the process of growing the plants seems more important than the aesthetic pleasure of looking at the flowers or the prospects of eating the vegetables.

Englishmen are also known for their devotion to animals and pets. The English firmly believe themselves to be the only nation on the Earth that is really kind to its animals.

Most people in Britain are free on Saturdays and Sundays. Everyone looks forward to the weekend. Some people like to go out of town to get away from it all for the weekend; others stay with their relatives or friends in different parts of the country, or stay in a hotel in the country or at the sea. Those who stay at home at the weekend try both to relax and to catch up with all the things they are too busy to do during the week. For women who go out to work these include housework, sewing, washing, shopping and sometimes gardening; for men these are all kinds of repairs and other odd jobs in the house, such as cleaning the car or gardening. Saturday morning is a very busy time for shopping. On Saturday afternoon the most important sporting events of the week take place – football, rugby, cricket, tennis, horse-racing, car and motor-cycle racing and other sports. Some men go out and watch, others sit and watch the sports programmes on television. Saturday evening is the favourite time for parties, dances, going to the cinema or to the theatre, in fact for 'going out'. Having gone to bed late the night before, many people have a lie-in on Sunday morning followed by a leisurely breakfast and a Sunday paper. If the weather is fine, people may decide to go out for the day. Some people spend Sunday evening quietly at home, others go to see friends, go to a concert or film, or go out for a drink.

Reading 3. In the 1920's.

Exercise 1. Time flies very fast, people change very much, as well as their hobbies do. Would you like to know what your grandparents were particularly fond of? Then read the text.

Well, social life in many working class families was concentrated round the church. There were concerts and lectures, sports facilities (cricket, football, tennis), parties and excursions into the country. And almost every church had its own choir and choral society. You gave concerts within your own church or visited other places. And every home had a piano and it was very common for both boys and girls to have piano lessons. So when you had a little social evening with friends or a family party, there were always a few people who could sit at the piano and play popular music and a lot of other people were standing and singing a ballad, both boys and girls. You had a very enjoyable evening with solos and duets and communal singing.

(James, 71)

Dancing was very popular too. In the early 20's the popular dances were the quick-step and the waltz and the foxtrot and then in the mid 20's the Charleston came in. Oh, we were crazy about dancing! In the holidays, if you went out to lunch in London, you were dancing. In all big hotels you were dancing at lunch. Extraordinary! And we had parties at home all the

time. And of course it was to portable gramophones, you know, the ones where you have to turn a handle to wind them up. Oh, it was all fun.

(Peggy, 73)

Exercise 2. Interview your grandparents and get ready to speak on their hobbies and pastimes.

Listening

Listening 1.

(New Headway English Course beginner (Student's book), t. 10.5)

Exercise. It is Monday morning. Listen to Betsy and Dan. Complete their conversation.

B Hi, Dan. Did you have a

D Yes, I did. Thanks.

B What did you do yesterday?

D Well, yesterday morning I and I with some friends.

B You on Sunday!

D I know, I know. I don't usually on Sunday!

B Did you yesterday afternoon?

D No, I didn't. I just I on TV.

B Ugh, football! What did you do yesterday evening?

D Oh, I didn't do much. I I didn't go to bed late. About 11.00.

Listening 2.

(New Headway English Course beginner (Student's book), t. 10.11)

Exercise 1. Listen to Colin and Fran talking about holidays. Underline what they say.

A They usually...	B Last year they...
go in summer / spring	went in autumn / winter
go to France / Spain	went to Switzerland / the USA
stay in a hotel / house	stayed in a hotel / chalet
eat in the hotel / restaurants	cooked their meals / ate in restaurants
go swimming / sailing	went skiing / ice-skating / walking
play tennis / golf	played cards / ice hockey
have / don't have a good time	had / didn't have a good time

Exercise 2. Speak on Colin and Fran's usual and last holidays.

Listening 3. Harry's Weekend

(Kovalskaya, unit 1, tapescript 1)

Exercise 1. Listen to the dialogue and distribute the activities according to the time of the day:

1.the weekend	cleaning the house, washing the car, doing the laundry; to go out for lunch; to go for a walk on the beach; to play tennis; to go for a run getting physical and getting fresh air
2.Friday night	to get an enormous pile of newspapers delivered; to have a nice quiet morning
3.Saturday morning	to quiet down a bit; to get ready for Monday; to watch a little television; to have an early night
4.Saturday afternoon	to go out to a restaurant; to have a huge meal; to have lots of salads, and chicken, and pies, lots of fruit
5.Saturday evening	to let loose; to try hard and have a good time
6.Sunday morning	to play
7.Sunday afternoon	to go to a bar for the happy hour; to go to the theatre; to go to bed early
8.Sunday evening	to go to a bar for the happy hour; to go to the theatre; to go to bed

Exercise 2. Listen to the recording and fill in the gaps with the necessary prepositions/adverbs.

- a. I mean, having a good time and enjoying yourself, looking ... happiness is very important ... American people.
- b. I'm very busy ... the week.
- c. It begins ... Friday night. We maybe go to a bar ... the happy hour.
- d. We want to get ... early Saturday morning.
- e. It's usually time to go... .. lunch.
- f. It depends ... the time.
- g. I'll tell you about that ... a minute.
- h. Maybe we'll go ... a walk ... the beach, or play tennis, or go ... a run.
- i. We just sit ... the garden ... a cup of coffee.
- j. You can spend two hours or more ... brunch.
- k. You can eat ... much ... you like.
- l. It's time to get ready ... Monday.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences:

1. The happy hour in the bars is when the drinks are ...
2. In bars the music is ...
3. You pay ..., maybe seven dollars per person, and for that you get ...

Exercise 4. Answer the questions:

1. What is Harry?
2. Does Harry have any spare time during the week?
3. Is it "in" to go to all-night parties in America nowadays?
4. Where do Harry and his family have brunch?
5. Is the number of TV channels limited in America?

Listening 4. Svetlana's Weekend

(Kovalskaya, unit 1, tapescript 2)

Exercise 1. Listen to the interview and fill in the gaps with the necessary prepositions.

- a. What I do depends ... the time of the year.
- b. ... the suburbs, ... the fields, ... the woods ... the town, everywhere.
- c. Children are ... school, at least until 1 o'clock.
- d. People often have a nice meal ... Sunday.
- e. The meal can go ... long time.
- f. One thing we do is talk to each other ... the phone, for hours, hours and hours.

Exercise 2. Listen to the interview and distribute the free time activities according to the time of the year:

pick mushrooms; play ice-hockey; go skating; go skiing; watch television; read popular and classical books; go fishing under the ice; go to the Black Sea; have parties; do shopping; have meals with families; drink vodka and cognac; visit each other; go to a dacha

Exercise 3. Answer the questions:

- a. What is Svetlana?
- b. Why is Svetlana seldom free at her weekend?
- b. Where does her family spend the weekend?
- c. How long does winter last in Russia?
- d. Are people in Russia free on Saturdays?
- e. When is the time for the whole family?
- f. Why is it often impossible to phone someone?

Speaking

Exercise 1. Answer the questions on the ways of spending a weekend according to the model and using the clues below.

Model: *-What do people do at the weekend in sunny (frosty) weather?*

-Well, it all depends. Personally I hate staying indoors in this sort of weather. I believe there is nothing like a walk or a skiing outing in the woods. I never feel so happy as when I'm out in the open air. And do you enjoy skiing and skating and walking?

What do people do when:

- it's warm spring weather (a cycling tour - go cycling; a car journey - go for a drive out into the country. ; a walking tour - go hiking)
- it's a warm summer day (a picnic on a river bank, in the woods; go fishing - a keen fisherman; wander through the woods - a walker; be fond of peace and quiet of the country; do smb a lot of good)
- in early autumn (a walk in the garden; leaves - fall off the trees, change colour; hunt mushrooms in the woods; a trip to the country; go on trip/ excursion)
- in wretched autumn weather (on a cool rainy day; be out; hardly any pleasure; stay outdoors; be/ get cold)?

Exercise 2. Answer the questions. Use the key words.

- What do you normally do at the weekend? (go out; stay indoors)
- Did you go away last Sunday (weekend)? (go on a day journey to Riga; enjoy oneself greatly)
- Do you ever go camping (climbing, cycling, fishing)? Are you fond of camping (climbing, walking, cycling, fishing)? (be a keen camper, climber, walker, cyclist, fisherman)
- Are you looking forward to your day off? What do you think of doing on Sunday? (go for a run out into the country; go for an outing to the woods; go on the visit to my friend, etc.)
- Are you (your friends) fond of picnics? (go on a picnic; a great pleasure) Where do people go on picnics?
- Where would you like to go for the weekend if the weather is lovely and warm? (go on a trip to Minsk: go for a walk in the park; go for a drive in the car)
- Where do people usually go for the weekend in winter (summer)? (go for a skiing outing in the woods; go to a river bank; go swimming/boating)

Writing

Exercise 1. Look at the picture and write on how people spend their free time.



Exercise 2. These e-mail messages were sent to a magazine for English language students. Read these messages. Are you interested in answering? Write a letter.

HEY YOU! READ THIS NOW! Fine, now that I've got your attention I can tell you that I'm a 19-year-old girl who loves to dance, talk, exercise and go horse-riding. I'm interested in everything from football to ballet. I promise that if you write to me you will get a response. SO WHAT ARE YOU WAITING FOR?!

Belle, France

Hi there. This is Pablo writing! I'm 25 and I'm looking for a serious pen pal of about my age. I'd prefer a girl, but even guys are accepted. I live in Spain and I'd like to correspond in English. If you're interested, I've got brown hair, green eyes and I'm rather tall. I love alternative music such as Sonic Youth and some pop too like Oasis, and of course rock. But I hate techno. I also love movies, theatre, arts... well, I'll tell you the rest if you write. Well, hope to hear from you soon.

Pablo, Spain

Hi! I like to skateboard, surf, roller-blade, ski, swim and play water polo. I LOVE animals. I've got five hamsters and a dog. I had eight fish but they are dead. I also had a turtle, but my neighbour's dog killed her. I also like playing computer games and listening to Armstrong and Ellington.

Tomek, Poland

ЛИТЕРАТУРА

1. Гедранович А.А., Шапаренко А.А. Общение на английском. – Минск: Изд-во МИУ, 2007.
2. Дроздова Т.Ю. Everyday English. – СПб.: ООО «Издательство «Химера», 2000.
3. Меркулова Е.М. и др. Английский язык для университетов. Чтение, письменная и устная практика. – СПб.: Издательство Союз, 2000.
4. Панова И.И. и др. Английский для начинающих. – Минск: Аверсэв, 2007.
5. Практика устной и письменной речи. В 2 ч. / авт.-сост. Ковальская М.П. – Витебск: УО «ВГУ им. П.М. Машерова», 2003, 2005.
6. Challenge I. Фастовец Р.В. и др. – Минск: Бестпринт, 2002.
7. Cunningham S., Moor P. Cutting Edge (Elementary, Pre-intermediate). Pearson Education Limited, 2001.
8. Karnevskaya E., Pavlovich N., Lopatko V. Learning to Listen. – Минск, 2002.
9. McCarthy M., O'Dell F. English Vocabulary in Use (Elementary). Cambridge University Press, 1999.
10. Redman S. English Vocabulary in Use (Pre-intermediate & intermediate). Cambridge University Press, 1997.
11. Soars L., Soars J. New Headway (Elementary, Beginner, Intermediate). Oxford University Press, 2001.
12. O'Sullivan D., Swan M., Walter C. The New Cambridge English Course. Cambridge University Press, 1997.
13. Ruse C. Opportunities (Beginner). Pearson Education Limited, 2003.
14. Thomas B.J. Intermediate Vocabulary. Pearson Education Limited, 1999.
15. Richards C.R. Listen Carefully. Macmillan Publishers Limited, 1999.
16. Vince M. Elementary, Intermediate Language Practice. Macmillan Publishers Limited, 2003.

Репозиторий ВГУ